
**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

**ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(D) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934
FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

OR

**TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(D) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT
OF 1934**

FOR THE TRANSITION PERIOD FROM _____ TO _____
COMMISSION FILE NUMBER 001-36485

ARDELYX, INC.

(EXACT NAME OF REGISTRANT AS SPECIFIED IN ITS CHARTER)

DELAWARE
(STATE OR OTHER JURISDICTION OF
INCORPORATION OR ORGANIZATION)

26-1303944
(I.R.S. EMPLOYER
IDENTIFICATION NO.)

34175 ARDENWOOD BLVD., SUITE 200
FREMONT, CALIFORNIA 94555
(ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL EXECUTIVE OFFICES, INCLUDING ZIP CODE)

(510) 745-1700
(REGISTRANT'S TELEPHONE NUMBER, INCLUDING AREA CODE)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

<u>Title of Each Class:</u>	<u>Name of Each Exchange on Which Registered:</u>
Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share	The NASDAQ Global Market

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (§229.405) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of Registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definition of "large accelerated filer", "accelerated filer", and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer (Do not check if a small reporting company) Small reporting company

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes No

The aggregate market value of the Registrant's common stock held by non-affiliates of the Registrant as of the last business day of the Registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, June 30, 2016, based on the last reported sales price of the Registrant's common stock of \$8.73 per share was \$197,442,141.

The number of shares of Registrant's Common Stock outstanding as of February 10, 2017 was 47,327,610.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE:

Portions of the Registrant's Definitive Proxy Statement for its 2017 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, which will be filed with the Commission within 120 days of December 31, 2016, the close of the Registrant's 2016 fiscal year, are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Report.

[Table of Contents](#)

ARDELYX, INC.
FORM 10-K FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016
TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
PART I	
Item 1. Business	2
Item 1A. Risk Factors	24
Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments	60
Item 2. Properties	60
Item 3. Legal Proceedings	60
Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures	60
PART II	
Item 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities	61
Item 6. Selected Financial Data	63
Item 7. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	64
Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk	75
Item 8. Consolidated Financial Statements and Supplementary Data	77
Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure	103
Item 9A. Controls and Procedures	103
Item 9B. Other Information	104
PART III	
Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance	105
Item 11. Executive Compensation	105
Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters	105
Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence	105
Item 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services	105
PART IV	
Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules	106

[Table of Contents](#)

NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Unless the context requires otherwise, in this Annual Report on Form 10-K the terms “Ardelyx”, “we,” “us,” “our” and “the Company” refer to Ardelyx, Inc.

This Annual Report on Form 10-K contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Any statements contained herein that are not statements of historical facts may be deemed to be forward-looking statements. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as “aim,” “anticipate,” “assume,” “believe,” “continue,” “could,” “due,” “estimate,” “expect,” “goal,” “intend,” “may,” “objective,” “plan,” “predict,” “potential,” “positioned,” “seek,” “should,” “target,” “will,” “would,” and other similar expressions that are predictions of or indicate future events and future trends, or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology. These forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- the timing of receipt of results for the on-going Phase 3 clinical trials evaluating tenapanor in patients with irritable bowel syndrome with constipation;
- the timing of the initiation of the second Phase 3 clinical trial evaluating tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in patients with end-stage renal disease, or ESRD, on dialysis;
- the timing of the receipt of results for the onset-of-action clinical trial for RDX7675;
- our expectation regarding the availability of the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for RDX7675;
- our plans with respect to the development of RDX8940;
- our expectations regarding our plans for and our participation in the commercialization of our product candidates, including our expectations regarding our plans to build our own sales and marketing organization to market and sell our product candidates;
- our expectations regarding the potential market size and the size of the patient populations for our product candidates;
- our plans with respect to our pre-clinical programs;
- our ability to identify and validate targets and novel drug candidates using our proprietary drug discovery and design platform including the Ardelyx Primary Enterocyte and Colonocyte Culture System;
- our ability to develop, acquire and advance product candidates into, and successfully complete, clinical trials;
- the timing or likelihood of regulatory filings, approvals and commercialization for our product candidates, including tenapanor and RDX7675;
- the implementation of our business model and strategic plans for our business, product candidates and technology;
- estimates of our expenses, future revenue, capital requirements, our needs for additional financing and our ability to obtain additional capital;
- our expectations regarding the time during which we will be an emerging growth company under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012;
- our financial performance; and
- developments and projections relating to our competitors and our industry.

Factors that could cause actual results or conditions to differ from those anticipated by these and other forward-looking statements include those more fully described in the “**ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS**” section and elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to update any forward-looking statement publicly, or to revise any forward-looking statement to reflect events or developments occurring after the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, even if new information becomes available in the future. Thus, you should not assume that our silence over time means that actual events are bearing out as expressed or implied in any such forward-looking statement.

ITEM 1. BUSINESS

Company overview

We are focused on enhancing the way patients with cardiorenal and gastrointestinal, or GI, diseases are treated by using the gut as the gateway to delivering medicines that matter. We have pioneered the development of small molecule therapeutics that act predominantly in the GI tract, thereby avoiding potentially negative side effects on the rest of the body.

Our strategy is to develop therapeutics focused on addressing cardiorenal and gastrointestinal (GI) diseases. We utilize our proprietary drug discovery and design platform by integrating technology that emulates the human GI tract with our gut-restriction chemistry capabilities. We have discovered and developed multiple portfolios of unique, gut-targeted therapeutics.

We plan to evolve from R&D-focused to an integrated biotech company, by building cardiorenal and GI businesses in the United States, while exploring a variety of strategic commercial options outside of the United States. Our ongoing pivotal Phase 3 clinical programs are focused on evaluating our potential products in the treatment of patients with irritable bowel syndrome with constipation, or IBS-C; end-stage renal disease, or ESRD, patients suffering from elevated phosphate, or hyperphosphatemia; and ESRD, chronic kidney disease, or CKD, and/or heart failure patients with elevated potassium, or hyperkalemia.

Overview of Our Cardiorenal Portfolio

Our cardiorenal portfolio is led by tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis. Tenapanor is a minimally-systemic small molecule that acts locally in the GI tract to inhibit the sodium transporter NHE3 and reduce sodium uptake from the gut. In human studies of orally-administered tenapanor, the drug was detected in the blood in less than 1% of thousands of collected serum samples, and even in those, at very low levels (< 1.5 ng/mL). We have evaluated tenapanor across 18 clinical studies in over 2,000 individuals to date.

Tenapanor has been specifically designed to work exclusively within the GI tract, thereby significantly reducing the amount of drug that is absorbed into the bloodstream and, we believe, reducing the potential side effects that could occur. When tenapanor blocks the NHE3 sodium transporter in the GI tract, thereby reducing the absorption of dietary sodium, there is a resulting increase in the protons within the cells. The increase in protons causes a selective reduction in phosphate uptake by tightening junctions or pores that regulate phosphate homeostasis, which then limits the amount of dietary phosphate that can pass from the gut into the blood. We have not observed this impact on other ions, nutrients or macromolecules in our clinical trials.

In February 2017, we reported data from the first Phase 3 clinical trial evaluating tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in patients with ESRD on dialysis. The study demonstrated a statistically significant difference in serum phosphorus levels from the end of the eight-week treatment period to the end of the four-week randomized withdrawal period between the tenapanor-treated group and the placebo-treated group in the responder patient population (mean -1.01 mg/dL, median of -1.3 mg/dL) and met its primary endpoint (95% confidence interval, -1.44, -0.21, LSmean -0.82 mg/dL, p=0.01). The responder population (n=80 out of 164) had a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from baseline to the end of the eight-week treatment period of 2.56 mg/dL, with a reduction of up to 5.7 mg/dL. Notably, in this group, 33 percent of patients had a reduction in serum phosphorus of greater than 3 mg/dL. Tenapanor was generally well-tolerated with only 7.8 percent of patients discontinuing treatment due to GI side effects. We expect to begin a second Phase 3 clinical trial in this indication in mid-2017. If data from this second Phase 3 trial are positive, we intend to submit an NDA to the FDA requesting approval to market in the United States for hyperphosphatemia. We intend to build our own sales and marketing organization to market and sell tenapanor for hyperphosphatemia in the United States. We believe that there are over 745,000 ESRD patients with hyperphosphatemia in major developed countries.

[Table of Contents](#)

The second product candidate in our cardiorenal portfolio is RDX7675. RDX7675 is an oral, non-absorbed, potassium-binding polymer that is being evaluated for the treatment of hyperkalemia, a potentially severe condition that results from elevated blood potassium and is common in patients with CKD and heart failure. We have developed RDX7675 as a patented improvement to sodium polystyrene sulfonate, or SPS, an FDA-approved polymer that has been the standard of care for the treatment of hyperkalemia for more than 50 years. We have made several key physical and chemical modifications to this polymer to eliminate sodium, optimize binding capacity, improve mouth feel and develop formulations with a more pleasant taste that are easier to ingest.

In 2016, we announced positive results from a clinical study in healthy volunteers evaluating once daily, twice-daily and three-times-daily doses of RDX7675. The study demonstrated that RDX7675 effectively binds potassium in the GI tract and that it is generally well-tolerated at all doses in the study. In addition, in the once-daily dose group we observed a very similar effect on potassium binding as was seen in the two or three times daily dosing groups with the same total daily dose. Based on these data, we determined that once-daily dosing is the most appropriate dosing regimen for further evaluation in the treatment of hyperkalemia in our Phase 3 clinical trial. A separate study was conducted in healthy volunteers to evaluate the palatability of oral formulations of RDX7675 compared to SPS. RDX7675 consistently outperformed SPS in all aspects of the taste assessments, including mouth feel, texture and flavor.

We initiated a Phase 3 clinical trial of RDX7675 in late 2016. We also began an onset of action clinical trial of RDX7675 in late 2016 and expect to have results in the first half of 2017. If data from these clinical trials are positive, we expect to rely on the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway to request marketing approval in the United States. We currently expect to establish our own cardiorenal sales and marketing organization to market and sell this product. We believe there are approximately two million people in the United States with CKD and/or heart failure who have hyperkalemia.

Our RDX013 program is aimed at discovering and evaluating orally-administered small molecule therapeutic candidates that modulate the transport of potassium in the GI tract. Our agents are designed to enhance potassium secretion in the colon to correct hyperkalemia in patients with CKD and/or heart failure. We have demonstrated proof-of-concept data with our RDX013 program molecules showing potassium secretion in preclinical models of disease.

RDX011 is our program focused on the discovery and development of second-generation NHE3 inhibitors. We have elucidated the mechanism of action of tenapanor as it relates to the inhibition of the absorption of dietary phosphorus, and we intend to leverage this knowledge as we seek to develop new products with selective properties.

Overview of Our Gastrointestinal Portfolio

Our gastrointestinal, or GI, portfolio is led by tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C. Tenapanor is a minimally-systemic small molecule that acts locally in the GI tract to inhibit the sodium transporter NHE3 and reduce sodium uptake from the gut. We are currently evaluating tenapanor in two Phase 3 clinical trials in patients with IBS-C, T3MPO-1 and T3MPO-2, which were initiated in the fourth quarter of 2015. We expect to report results from T3MPO-1, a 12-week clinical trial, in mid-2017 and from T3MPO-2, a six-month clinical trial, in late 2017. We also expect to have results in late 2017 from T3MPO-3, a long-term safety study, which is enrolling patients who have completed T3MPO-1 or T3MPO-2.

We first reported positive data in October 2014 from the Phase 2b trial of tenapanor in patients with IBS-C. At the 50mg twice-daily dose, the study met its primary efficacy endpoint of a statistically significant increase in the complete spontaneous bowel movement, or CSBM, responder rate. The study also demonstrated clinically meaningful improvements in pain and other measures of discomfort and that tenapanor was well-tolerated in this patient population.

If the Phase 3 clinical trials are positive, we expect to submit an NDA to the FDA to request marketing approval in the United States for IBS-C. We currently expect to establish our own sales and marketing

[Table of Contents](#)

organization to market and sell tenapanor for IBS-C in the United States. While estimates vary, it is projected that approximately 11 million people in the United States suffer from IBS-C.

A second candidate in our GI portfolio is RDX8940. RDX8940 is a minimally absorbed, oral TGR5 agonist for which we submitted an investigational new drug application, or IND, in late 2016. TGR5 is an important receptor present on cells within the GI tract that is activated by the bile acids that the body secretes in response to the food we ingest. As part of a normal physiological response, the binding of bile acids to TGR5 stimulates the production of critical metabolic hormones such as those involved in maintenance of the body's reaction to nutrients and the maintenance and care of the structural integrity of the gut. Based on the preclinical data we have generated to date, we currently are evaluating development of RDX8940 for the treatment of patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, or NASH. We are also evaluating the potential for RDX8940 in additional GI indications.

RDX011 is our second-generation NHE3 inhibitor. We intend to leverage our knowledge of NHE3 inhibitors and their effect on sodium and phosphate management as we seek to develop novel products. We also intend to evaluate new indications for tenapanor and other NHE3 inhibitors to exploit the unique capabilities and tools we have developed to modulate transport of ions and other processes in the gut.

The focus of our RDX023 program is on the discovery and development of gut-biased farnesoid X receptor, or FXR, agonists for the treatment of GI and inflammatory diseases. FXR is expressed at high levels in the liver and intestine and plays a central role in the regulation of bile acid and lipid homeostasis. Systemic FXR agonists appear to have limitations based on their potential to have undesirable and negative effects on multiple systems in the body. We are evaluating our differentiated gut-biased RDX023 program molecules in animal models of NASH/nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, or NAFLD, bile acid diarrhea and other indications.

OUR PROPRIETARY DRUG DISCOVERY AND DESIGN PLATFORM

The emerging view of the GI tract is that it is a critical and active sentinel organ that transmits signals from the environment to instruct other organs how to respond to a meal, the microbiome or even pathogens. We have created a unique discovery and design platform that permits us to discover targets found in the GI tract that regulate important processes in the body and design products candidates that act upon those targets in the GI tract to take advantage of the gut's ability to communicate with other organs. Our platform integrates two critical concepts: (i) our proprietary chemistry capabilities that enable us to design and optimize gut-restricted compounds that can provide a higher margin of safety than systemically absorbed compounds, and (ii) our stem cell-based translational technology called the Ardelyx Primary Enterocyte and Colonocyte Culture System, or APECCS, that enables us to discover targets in the GI tract which control health and disease processes, to optimize drug candidates and to understand their mechanisms of action. Our platform can be applied across the entire GI tract, allowing for the broadest evaluation of disease targets to develop medicines optimized for specific diseases. The predictive ability of our platform enables us to better assess, at a very early stage, the potential for small molecule compounds to treat specific diseases.

How Our Platform Works

We have developed several proprietary capabilities that allow us to discover and design new gut-restricted compounds, including the following:

1. **Gut-restriction Chemistry**. Since our founding almost ten years ago, we have become experts in the development of gut-restricted small molecules. This has required the development of new techniques to ensure that the small molecules are not absorbed. Gut-restriction chemistry includes a suite of proprietary techniques, technology and know-how that we have developed in order to restrict the mechanism of the drug to targets within the GI tract. Drugs that have minimal absorption have the potential to provide greater safety than drugs that are absorbed.

[Table of Contents](#)

2. **Stem Cell Technology.** APECCS is an *in-vitro* capability we have developed and industrialized. We start with human stem cells obtained from biopsies from the intestinal tract of healthy or diseased patients. We grow these cells in conditions where the resulting tissue mimics the key aspects of the area of the human gastrointestinal tract from where the stem cells were derived. We can also achieve this process with mouse cells, allowing us to make the connection between mouse and human results. This, in turn, allows us to evaluate the potential efficacy of our drugs before we see their effects in humans.

OUR PRODUCT PIPELINE

The following table summarizes key information about our product candidates as of December 31, 2016:

PROGRAM	INDICATION	RESEARCH	PHASE 1	PHASE 2	PHASE 3
CARDIORENAL PORTFOLIO					
TENAPANOR <i>(NHE3 Inhibitor)</i>	ESRD Hyperphosphatemia	▶			
RDX7675 <i>(Potassium Binder)</i>	Hyperkalemia	▶			
RDX013 <i>(Potassium Secretagogue)</i>	Hyperkalemia	▶			
RDX011 <i>(NHE3 Inhibitor)</i>	Cardiorenal Indications	▶			
GASTROINTESTINAL PORTFOLIO					
TENAPANOR <i>(NHE3 Inhibitor)</i>	IBS-C	▶			
RDX8940 <i>(TGR5 Agonist)</i>	GI Indications	▶			
RDX011 <i>(NHE3 Inhibitor)</i>	GI Indications	▶			
RDX023 <i>(FXR Agonist)</i>	GI Indications	▶			

Cardiorenal Portfolio

Our cardiorenal portfolio includes two Phase 3 clinical product candidates, tenapanor in Phase 3 clinical development for treating hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis and RDX7675 in Phase 3 clinical development for treating hyperkalemia in CKD and heart failure patients. In addition to our two phase 3 product candidates, we have two programs that are in research phase.

Tenapanor for Treating Hyperphosphatemia in ESRD Patients on Dialysis

The lead product candidate in our cardiorenal portfolio is tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia, or high levels of blood phosphorus, in ESRD patients on dialysis. Hyperphosphatemia is a significant problem among dialysis patients worldwide.

CKD is the progressive deterioration of renal function that can occur over several months or years. The symptoms of worsening kidney function are nonspecific, and can include having less energy, reduced appetite, dry itchy skin, swollen feet and ankles or generally just not feeling well. If the deterioration continues and is not halted by either changes in lifestyle or with the assistance of pharmacological intervention, the disease will likely cause significant cardiovascular morbidity, and can progress to ESRD, the final stage of CKD, where kidney function will be lost entirely.

[Table of Contents](#)

Current management of ESRD includes hemodialysis and peritoneal dialysis as a means to filter toxins from the blood once kidneys have failed. Unless this intervention occurs, kidney failure results in the accumulation of waste products that may ultimately cause death. Hemodialysis, the most common form of dialysis, generally requires a patient to visit a dialysis center at least three times per week for a three- to five-hour session, significantly reducing quality of life.

Phosphorus, a vital element required for most cellular processes, is present in almost every food in the Western diet, and, in individuals with normal kidney function, any excess dietary phosphorus is efficiently removed by the kidney and excreted in urine. In adults with functioning kidneys, normal serum phosphorus levels are 2.6 to 3.8 mg/dL. With kidney failure, elevated phosphorus becomes harmful and is diagnosed as hyperphosphatemia when serum phosphorus levels are greater than 5.0 mg/dL. Although patients with ESRD rely on dialysis to eliminate harmful agents, phosphorus is not readily removed by the procedure and other means of managing phosphorus levels must be employed.

In ESRD patients, excess levels of phosphorus has been shown to lead to an increase in cardiovascular disease risk, as well as increases in serum FGF-23, an important regulator of phosphate and vitamin D metabolism. Highly elevated levels of FGF23 is an independent risk factor for adverse cardiac clinical outcomes as well as the development of secondary hyperparathyroidism (SHPT), marked by elevated parathyroid hormone. SHPT is associated with renal osteodystrophy, a condition of abnormal bone growth characterized by brittle bones.

Since dialysis is unable to efficiently eliminate excess phosphorus, ESRD patients are put on restrictive low phosphorus diets and are currently prescribed medications called phosphate binders, the only interventions currently marketed for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia. Phosphate binders act by binding dietary phosphorus and commonly need to be taken with meals and snacks. They include calcium, iron or lanthanum, a rare-earth metal, which bind to and precipitate with dietary phosphate in the GI tract. The goal of these phosphorus binders is for patients to eliminate through their stool the precipitated phosphorus that comes from the food they ingest. A limitation of this approach is the systemic excess absorption of calcium, iron or lanthanum, resulting in side effects and other unintended consequences for ESRD patients.

Safety and tolerability have been significant concerns with many approved phosphate binders. The more common side effects of approved phosphate binders include long-term vascular calcification, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea or constipation and ileus or disruption of the normal propulsive ability of the GI tract.

ESRD patients, who generally are severely restricted in their fluid intake, are prescribed on average 19 oral pills per day, of which approximately 50% comprise phosphate binders to reduce serum phosphorus. The amount of phosphorus a binder can remove is limited by its binding capacity, and therefore, increasing the dose, and hence the pill burden, of the binder is the only way to increase the amount of phosphorus being bound and excreted. As a result of pill burden and mass, as well as a number of side effects, prescribed phosphate binder doses are intolerable for many patients.

We are developing tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis. Tenapanor has the potential to be the first small molecule approach to treating hyperphosphatemia, with a unique mechanism of action that acts by inhibiting, or blocking, the NHE3 transporter in the GI tract to reduce the absorption of dietary sodium. When tenapanor blocks the NHE3 sodium transporter in the GI tract, thereby reducing the absorption of dietary sodium, there is a resulting increase in the protons within the cells. The increase in protons causes a selective reduction in phosphate uptake by tightening junctions or pores that regulate phosphate homeostasis, which then limits the amount of dietary phosphate that can pass from the gut into the blood. We have not observed this impact on other ions, nutrients or macromolecules in our clinical trials. We have submitted a manuscript for publication of this mechanism in a scientific peer-reviewed journal. Tenapanor has been specifically designed to work exclusively within the GI tract, thereby significantly reducing the amount of drug that is absorbed into the bloodstream and the potential side effects that could occur. In human studies of orally-administered tenapanor, the drug was detected in the blood in less than 1% in thousands of collected serum samples, and even in those, at very low levels (< 1.5 ng/mL). We have evaluated tenapanor across 18 clinical studies in over 2,000 individuals to date.

[Table of Contents](#)

Clinical data supporting tenapanor in hyperphosphatemia

In February 2017, we announced data from our first Phase 3 clinical trial evaluating tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis.

The Phase 3 trial was an eight-week, double-blind, randomized trial, with a four-week placebo-controlled randomized withdrawal period. We enrolled a total of 219 ESRD patients with hyperphosphatemia who are on dialysis. Enrolled patients were randomized evenly into three arms, in which all groups received tenapanor for eight weeks. Tenapanor was administered at doses of 3 mg or 10 mg twice-daily and in a dose-titration arm starting at 30 mg twice-daily with the option to down-titrate once a week during the first four weeks to 20, 15, 10 and 3 mg twice-daily, based on GI tolerability. After the end of the eight-week treatment period, patients were re-randomized 1:1 to either remain on their current tenapanor dose or switch to placebo for a four-week, placebo-controlled, randomized withdrawal period.

The primary endpoint of the trial was the difference in change in serum phosphorus between the pooled tenapanor-treated patients and placebo-treated patients from the end of the eight-week treatment period to the end of the four-week randomized withdrawal period, in the responder population. The responder population, which was reviewed by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, is defined as patients who demonstrate a greater than or equal to 1.2 mg/dL decrease in serum phosphorus from baseline during the initial eight-week treatment period.

The study demonstrated a statistically significant difference in serum phosphorus levels from the end of the eight-week treatment period to the end of the four-week randomized withdrawal period between the tenapanor-treated group and the placebo-treated group in the responder patient population (mean -1.01 mg/dL, median of -1.3 mg/dL) and met its primary endpoint (95% confidence interval, -1.44, -0.21, LSmean -0.82 mg/dL, p=0.01). The responder population (n=80 out of 164) had a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from baseline to the end of the eight-week treatment period of 2.56 mg/dL, with a reduction of up to 5.7 mg/dL. Notably, in this group, 33 percent of patients had a reduction in serum phosphorus of greater than 3 mg/dL.

Tenapanor was well-tolerated in the trial. In the eight-week treatment period, the only adverse event that affected more than five percent of patients treated with tenapanor was diarrhea (39 percent), a patient-reported side effect of loosened stool or increased frequency in bowel movements regardless of magnitude. In the four-week randomized withdrawal period, there was a diarrhea rate of 1.2 percent for patients treated with tenapanor compared with 2.4 percent on placebo. Treatment discontinuations due to diarrhea for patients on tenapanor was 7.8 percent (n=17). There were no discontinuations due to diarrhea in the randomized withdrawal period.

In order to fully assess GI tolerability, patients used an eDiary to record the frequency of daily bowel habits, as well as stool form using the Bristol Stool Form Scale, or BSFS. During the eight-week treatment period, there was a 0.4 per day increase in bowel movement frequency from baseline, and during the four-week randomized withdrawal period, there was a 0.29 per day increase as compared to placebo. Bowel movement frequency was within the normal range in all groups. During the eight-week treatment period, there was a 0.87 point increase in BSFS from a baseline score of 4.2, out of a maximum of seven, where seven is liquid stool. During the four-week randomized withdrawal period, there was a 0.7 point difference in BSFS between placebo (4.4) and tenapanor treatment (5.1).

Based on the results from this trial, we intend to initiate a second Phase 3 study of tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis in mid-2017. We currently expect that this Phase 3 study will include a 26-week open-label treatment period, with a randomized withdrawal period followed by an additional 26-week long-term safety extension. We currently intend to build our own sales and marketing organization to market and sell tenapanor for hyperphosphatemia in the United States.

The hyperphosphatemia market

Phosphate binders are the only drugs marketed for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients. The various types of phosphate binders commercialized in the United States include the following:

- Calcium carbonate (many over-the-counter brands including Tums and Caltrate)

[Table of Contents](#)

- Calcium acetate (several prescription brands including PhosLo and Phoslyra)
- Lanthanum carbonate (Fosrenol marketed by Shire)
- Sevelamer hydrochloride (Renagel, marketed by Sanofi)
- Sevelamer carbonate (Renvela, marketed by Sanofi)
- Sucroferric oxyhydroxide (Velphoro, marketed by Vifor Fresenius)
- Ferric citrate (Auryxia, marketed by Keryx)

The hydrochloride form of sevelamer, Renagel, was launched in the United States by Genzyme Corporation in 1998 prior to its acquisition by Sanofi, and the carbonate form, Renvela, was launched in 2008. Sanofi booked €935 million (\$1.04 billion) in worldwide sales of sevelamer during 2015 and €687 million through September 30, 2016. Generic sevelamer was expected to enter the U.S. market in early 2014 after expiration of Sanofi's patent, but as of 2017, no generic sevelamer has yet been approved in the United States. Generic sevelamer was approved, however, in certain jurisdictions in Europe in 2015.

Each of these agents has various limitations. Calcium carbonate and calcium acetate can cause long term vascular calcification. Lanthanum carbonate (Fosrenol) entered the market in 2004 as an alternative to calcium and aluminum based agents, but nephrologists' concerns about the long term toxicity from the absorption of metals such as lanthanum and its GI side effect profile have limited its market penetration. Sevelamer hydrochloride (Renagel) is an acidic formulation of sevelamer that has been linked with worsening of metabolic acidosis in some patients. Sevelamer carbonate (Renvela) was developed as an improved formulation of sevelamer to reduce incidence of metabolic acidosis. The active ingredient of both products, sevelamer, is associated long-term with vomiting (22%), nausea (20%), diarrhea (19%), dyspepsia (16%), abdominal pain (9%), and flatulence (8%). Ferric citrate (Auryxia), an iron-based phosphate binder, was approved by the FDA in September 2014. While iron is often deficient in ESRD patients because of CKD-associated anemia and lack of sufficient dietary iron, the FDA has required Auryxia to add a warning of iron-overload in the label for use in ESRD.

In addition to the currently marketed phosphate binders, we are aware of at least two other binders in development, including fermagate (Alpharen), an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Opko Health, Inc., and PT20, an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Shield Therapeutics.

According to the most recent data available from the U.S. Renal Data System, in 2014 there were 428,558 patients on hemodialysis in the United States. Additionally, according to the European ERA-EDTA Registry 2012 Annual Report and a study in 2010 by the Japanese Society for Dialysis Therapy, there were approximately 280,000 patients on hemodialysis in Europe and about 250,000 in Japan. We estimate, based on phosphate binder utilization, the only approved therapies for hyperphosphatemia, that there are approximately 300,000, 225,000 and 220,000 ESRD patients with hyperphosphatemia in the United States, countries in Europe and Japan, respectively, resulting in approximately 745,000 ESRD patients with hyperphosphatemia in such countries.

Because many ESRD patients with hyperphosphatemia are unable to lower serum phosphorus levels to below 5.5 mg/dL with currently marketed phosphate binders, we believe there is a significant medical need for new agents with new mechanisms, demonstrated efficacy, a strong safety profile, and significantly lower pill burden. We believe that tenapanor, if approved, has the potential to have the lowest pill burden and mass among any currently marketed hyperphosphatemia products, with milligram rather than gram quantities. In addition, we may evaluate whether tenapanor has the potential to be used in combination with phosphate binders for those patients who cannot achieve adequate phosphate control with a single agent.

RDX7675 for treating hyperkalemia

The second product candidate in our cardiorenal portfolio is RDX7675. RDX7675 is an oral, non-absorbed, potassium-binding polymer that is being evaluated for the treatment of hyperkalemia, a potentially severe

[Table of Contents](#)

condition that results from elevated blood potassium. Hyperkalemia is generally defined as the presence of blood potassium levels greater than 5.0 mEq/L. Normal levels are 3.5 to 5.0 mEq/L. When hyperkalemia is severe, above 7.0 mEq/L, there is a significantly increased risk of death because of the potential for heart conduction problems.

Hyperkalemia can be caused by a variety of sources. Kidney disease can result in the elevation of potassium in the blood. Also, certain drugs such as the common hypertension medications known as RAAS inhibitors, which inhibit the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, can cause hyperkalemia. As a result, the dosage of RAAS inhibitors must often be significantly reduced in patients whose potassium levels are elevated (such as in those with CKD and heart failure) because of the fear that elevated potassium can cause significantly worse problems than hypertension including sudden cardiac arrest in severe cases. In fact, despite the success of RAAS inhibitors in controlling blood pressure in these populations, several published guidelines have suggested that physicians should reduce and possibly discontinue RAAS inhibitors in order to manage the risk of hyperkalemia in CKD and heart failure patients. The alternative medications used to control hypertension, including diuretics and calcium channel blockers, are significantly less effective than RAAS inhibitors, particularly in patients with failing kidneys and severe hypertension. According to the publication *Market Dynamix: Hyperkalemia* released by Spherix Global Insights, U.S. cardiologists reported that of the patients who would benefit from RAAS inhibition, up to 38% of patients with heart failure and up to 55% of patients with both heart failure and CKD are being administered a sub-optimal dose or none at all, and nephrologists reported that at least one-third of patients who would benefit from RAAS inhibition receive a sub-optimal dose or none at all. We believe there is a strong medical need for new medications that control hyperkalemia in order to allow for continued use of RAAS inhibitors to control hypertension in these patient populations.

RDX7675 is an oral, non-absorbed, potassium-binding polymer that has demonstrated effective binding to potassium in pharmacodynamics studies in healthy volunteers. Using our unique chemistry, we have designed RDX7675 as a patented improvement to sodium polystyrene sulfonate, or SPS, an FDA approved polymer that has been the standard-of-care for the treatment of hyperkalemia for more than 50 years. We made several key physical and chemical modifications to eliminate sodium and sorbitol, optimize binding capacity, greatly improve palatability and develop formulations that would taste pleasant and be easier to ingest. We believe these improvements offer unique advantages for patients with hyperkalemia and could increase patient satisfaction and compliance.

Clinical data supporting RDX7675 in hyperkalemia

In January 2016, we announced results from an open-label pharmacodynamic study of RDX7675 in healthy adult volunteers. The study consisted of a two-day treatment-free baseline period and a four-day treatment period. The study included four cohorts, and in each cohort 12 subjects received RDX7675 and three subjects received a similar dose of sodium polystyrene sulfonate, or SPS for a total of 60 subjects. RDX7675 was administered at 4.6 g BID (9.2 g/day), 6.9 g BID (13.8 g/day), 4.6 g TID (13.8 g/day) and 9.2 g TID (27.5 g/day), and resulted in a mean increase of fecal potassium from baseline of 888 mg/day, 1,791 mg/day, 1,408 mg/day, and 1,670 mg/day, respectively. RDX7675 was generally well-tolerated at all doses and demonstrated comparable results to those observed with SPS. Other fecal electrolytes were monitored during the study and no unexpected changes were observed; in particular, fecal magnesium remained unchanged from baseline.

Sodium is currently used as a counter-ion in SPS products marketed in the United States and certain other products under development. We formulated RDX7675 with a calcium counter-ion, rather than a sodium counter-ion, as adding sodium to the daily intake of the target patient population runs counter to best clinical practice. In patients with CKD and/or heart failure, the standard of care is a low-sodium diet as sodium can contribute to fluid overload and edema, a common experience for these patients. In addition, excess sodium diminishes the beneficial effects of blood pressure drugs such as RAAS inhibitors. We have also improved both the physical properties of polystyrene sulfonate and the formulation in a manner that we expect may lead to improved patient adherence and compliance. Notably, in a single center, randomized, crossover study to evaluate

[Table of Contents](#)

various oral formulations of RDX7675 in healthy subjects, RDX7675 consistently outperformed SPS in all aspects of the taste assessments, including mouth feel, texture and flavor.

In December 2016, we initiated two clinical trials: an onset of action clinical trial and a Phase 3 clinical trial. The onset of action trial is designed to evaluate the effect of RDX7675 on the rate of blood potassium lowering, along with safety and efficacy, in approximately 60 patients with hyperkalemia. Data from this trial are expected in the first half of 2017. This will mark the first time we will have efficacy and safety data from RDX7675 in a patient population with hyperkalemia. The Phase 3 clinical trial will enroll patients with hyperkalemia who are taking RAAS inhibitor medications. The trial will include three parts: Part A will be a single-blind study in which all subjects receive RDX7675 for four weeks; Part B will be an eight-week, double-blind, placebo controlled, randomized withdrawal study; and Part C is an open label long term safety study for subjects from Parts A and B. The primary endpoint for Part A is serum potassium change from Part A baseline, and the primary endpoint for Part B is serum potassium change from Part B baseline (RDX7675 versus placebo). If these clinical trials are positive, we would expect to submit an NDA to the FDA under the 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway to request marketing approval of RDX7675 for hyperkalemia in the United States. We currently expect to establish our own sales and marketing organization to sell this product.

The hyperkalemia market

Based on various literature sources, we believe there are approximately 2 million people with CKD and/or heart failure in the United States annually who also have occurrences of hyperkalemia. According to a retrospective observational study of a national cohort of 246,000 veterans cared for in the Veterans Health Administration, about 21% and 42% of patients with CKD Stage 3b and Stage 4, respectively, had a hyperkalemic event during a 12-month period, suggesting that hyperkalemia affects about 900,000 individuals with CKD Stage 3b or Stage 4 in the United States. According to the United States Renal Data System 2014 Atlas of CKD & ESRD, over 50% of CKD Stage 3b and Stage 4 patients are prescribed RAAS inhibitors because of their efficacy in controlling hypertension and success in slowing the clinical course of CKD. Additionally, according to the American Heart Association, 5.7 million Americans are living today with heart failure. Our proprietary research suggests that up to 16%, or approximately 900,000, of these patients had hyperkalemia during a 12-month period. Over half of heart failure patients are prescribed RAAS inhibitors. Our proprietary research also suggests that up to 200,000 patients with ESRD could benefit from an agent that treats hyperkalemia.

We are aware of at least two drugs approaching or on the market for the treatment of hyperkalemia. Veltassa (patiromer FOS), an oral, polymer-based potassium binder, was approved for marketing by the FDA in October 2015 and was commercially launched by Relypsa, which was acquired by Galenica AG for \$1.5 billion in September 2016. Additionally, ZS Pharma submitted an NDA in June 2015 for ZS-9, a sodium zirconium cyclosilicate-based oral potassium binder. ZS-9 is expected to be commercially launched by AstraZeneca, which acquired ZS Pharma in December 2015 for \$2.7 billion.

RDX013 Program: Small Molecule for Treating Hyperkalemia

Our RDX013 program is aimed at discovering and evaluating orally-administered small molecule therapeutic candidates that modulate the transport of potassium in the GI tract. Our agents are designed to enhance potassium secretion in the colon to correct hyperkalemia in patients with CKD and/or heart failure. We have demonstrated proof-of-concept data with RDX013 showing potassium secretion in preclinical models of disease.

RDX011 Program: Second-Generation NHE3 Inhibitor

RDX011 is our program focuses on the discovery and development of second-generation NHE3 inhibitors. We have elucidated the mechanism of action of tenapanor as it relates to inhibition of dietary phosphorus, and we intend to leverage this knowledge as we seek to develop new products with selective properties.

[Table of Contents](#)

Gastrointestinal Portfolio

Our gastrointestinal portfolio includes two product candidates, tenapanor in Phase 3 clinical development for treating IBS-C and RDX8940, a TGR5 agonist for which we have filed an IND in late 2016 to begin clinical studies, as well as two programs that are in the research phase.

Tenapanor: NHE3 Inhibitor for Treating IBS-C

IBS-C is a GI disorder in which abdominal pain or discomfort is associated with constipation, and which significantly impacts the health and quality of life of affected patients. In a third-party study, over 50% of IBS-C patients rated their pain, constipation and straining as being “extremely bothersome.” In the same study, GI symptoms led to an average 4.9 days of “disrupted productivity” and 0.8 days of missed work per month. There is no specific test or biomarker for IBS-C and therefore its presence is diagnosed by symptoms and by eliminating other disorders. IBS-C is very similar to chronic constipation and is clinically distinguished by a significant abdominal pain component.

Tenapanor is a minimally-systemic small molecule that acts locally in the GI tract to inhibit the sodium transporter NHE3 and reduce sodium uptake from the gut. Part of its mechanism to treat IBS-C constipation is an osmotic effect in the intestines – water follows salt and stool is gently loosened by the body’s own fluids. We are also continuing to evaluate the mechanism that explains the effect of tenapanor on pain in IBS-C. In human studies of orally-administered tenapanor, the drug was detected in the blood in less than 1% in thousands of collected serum samples, and even in those, at very low levels (< 1.5 ng/mL). We have evaluated tenapanor across 18 clinical studies in over 2,000 individuals to date.

Clinical data supporting tenapanor in IBS-C

We conducted a Phase 2b clinical trial in IBS-C patients and announced results from that study in October 2014. The clinical trial was a randomized, double blind, placebo-controlled, multi-center study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of three dose levels of tenapanor in 356 patients with IBS-C as defined by the Rome III criteria and who had active disease as determined during a two-week screening period. Patients who qualified and who were randomized into the study received 5, 20, or 50 mg of tenapanor or placebo twice daily for 12 consecutive weeks. At the end of this treatment period, patients were followed for an additional four weeks. The results were reported on an intent-to-treat basis.

The primary endpoint, CSBM responder rate, was achieved in 60.7% of patients receiving tenapanor 50 mg twice daily versus 33.7% receiving placebo ($p<0.001$). A CSBM responder was defined as a patient who had an increase of greater than or equal to one CSBM from baseline during six out of 12 weeks. We also measured a more stringent CSBM responder rate where a responder was defined as a patient who an increase of greater than or equal to one CSBM from baseline and had three or more CSBMs per week during nine out of 12 weeks. The CSBM nine of 12-week responder rate was achieved in 23.8% of patients receiving tenapanor 50 mg twice daily versus 7.9% receiving placebo ($p<0.004$).

An abdominal pain responder was achieved in 65.5% of patients receiving tenapanor 50 mg twice daily versus 48.3% receiving placebo ($p<0.026$). An abdominal pain responder was defined as a patient who experienced at least a 30% decrease in abdominal pain from baseline for six of 12 weeks. We also measured a more stringent abdominal pain responder rate where a responder was defined as a patient who experienced at least a 30% decrease in abdominal pain from baseline for nine of 12 weeks. For this more stringent abdominal pain measurement, the abdominal pain nine of 12 responder rate was achieved in 48.8% of patients receiving tenapanor 50 mg twice daily versus 31.5% receiving placebo ($p<0.022$).

The overall responder rate, or dual composite endpoint percent, was achieved in 50% of patients receiving tenapanor 50 mg twice daily versus 23.6% receiving placebo ($p<0.001$). An overall responder was defined as a patient who was a CSBM responder and an abdominal pain responder during the same week for six of 12 weeks. We also measured a more stringent overall responder rate where a responder was defined as a patient who was

[Table of Contents](#)

both a CSBM responder and an abdominal pain responder during the same week for nine of 12 weeks. The overall nine of 12-week responder rate was achieved in 20.2% of patients receiving tenapanor 50 mg twice daily versus 6.7% receiving placebo ($p < 0.01$).

Most other secondary endpoints measured also demonstrated significant improvements for patients receiving 50 mg tenapanor twice daily compared to placebo-treated patients.

A dose response relationship among all doses was observed in the primary endpoint, as well as in most secondary endpoints, although statistical significance was not achieved at the 5 mg or 20 mg doses. Additionally, the activity of tenapanor was maintained throughout the entire 12-week treatment period.

Tenapanor was well-tolerated in these patients, and the safety results were consistent with those observed in previous tenapanor trials. The most common adverse events at 50 mg twice daily (greater than or equal to 5%) that occurred more frequently in tenapanor-treated patients compared to placebo-treated patients were diarrhea at 11.2% vs. 0%, and urinary tract infections at 5.6% vs. 4.4%. Overall rates of discontinuation due to adverse events were 4.5% for the tenapanor-treated patients (50 mg twice daily) and 3.3% for the placebo-treated patients. Based on the analysis of plasma samples tested as part of the study, the minimally-systemic nature of tenapanor was confirmed.

We are currently conducting two pivotal Phase 3 clinical trials in the United States with tenapanor in IBS-C patients, T3MPO-1 and T3MPO-2. T3MPO-1 is a 12-week double-blind, placebo-controlled, multi-center, randomized trial with a 4-week, placebo-controlled randomized withdrawal period. T3MPO-2 is a six-month, double-blind, placebo-controlled multi-center, randomized trial. The primary endpoint in each of the trials is the six of 12-week overall responder rate. An overall responder is defined as a weekly responder for six of 12 weeks where both the abdominal pain response and the CSBM response criteria are met during the same week. An abdominal pain responder is defined as a patient with a 30% or greater reduction in average weekly worst abdominal pain compared to baseline during the week, and a CSBM responder is defined as a patient who has an increase of one or more in average weekly CSBMs compared to baseline during the week. We are also evaluating other endpoints in these studies, including CSBM and abdominal pain responder rates for six of 12 weeks as well as for nine of 12 weeks, abdominal symptoms and other clinically relevant endpoints. The T3MPO-1 trial is fully enrolled with over 600 patients, and we expect to report trial results in mid-2017. The T3MPO-2 trial fully enrolled with over 600 patients and with results from this trial by year-end 2017. Patients completing T3MPO-1 and T3MPO-2 are eligible to enroll into T3MPO-3, an open-label, long-term safety study where patients can continue to receive tenapanor for up to one year. By year-end 2017, we also expect to have T3MPO-3 data from a sufficient number of patients required to support the NDA filing of tenapanor. If these trials are successful, we currently expect to submit an NDA to the FDA in 2018 for marketing approval in the United States and we currently expect to commence a clinical program to evaluate tenapanor in patients with chronic idiopathic constipation (CIC).

The IBS-C market

Numerous treatments exist for the constipation component of IBS-C, many of which are over-the-counter. We are aware of two prescription products marketed for IBS-C, Linzess (linaclotide) marketed by Ironwood Pharmaceuticals and Allergan and Amitiza (lubiprostone) marketed by Sucampo and Takeda. In two Phase 3 clinical trials of Linzess in IBS-C patients, the placebo-adjusted rate of IBS-C patients reaching the primary endpoint, overall responder rate, indicating a significant response during six out of 12 weeks of treatment, was 12.6% and 19.8%, respectively. In these studies, Linzess caused diarrhea in up to 17% more patients than placebo. Trulance (plecanatide) was approved by the FDA in January 2017 for use in adults for treatment of CIC, and Synergy Pharmaceuticals, the drug's manufacturer, presented Phase 3 data from two clinical studies of Trulance in IBS-C patients in December 2016. In one study, the placebo-adjusted rate of IBS-C patients reaching the primary endpoint, overall responder rate, indicating a significant response during 6 out of 12 weeks of treatment, was 7.3% and 9.8% of patients receiving 3mg and 6mg, respectively. In the other study, the placebo-adjusted rate of IBS-C patients reaching the same primary endpoint was 12.4% and 11.7% of patients receiving

[Table of Contents](#)

3mg and 6mg, respectively. Synergy has stated its intent to submit an NDA for Trulance in IBS-C in the first quarter 2017.

We believe that tenapanor may offer a significant benefit over currently marketed drugs like Amitiza, Linzess and Trulance, in part because of the efficacy and tolerance profile demonstrated in our Phase 2b clinical trial. Within the United States, there are approximately 11 million patients that suffer that suffer from IBS-C. There is significant unmet need for prescription medications, where only 1 in 4 treated patients were very satisfied with the current FDA approved treatments in IBS-C.

RDX8940: TGR5 Agonist

RDX8940 is a minimally absorbed, oral TGR5 agonist for which we submitted an IND in late 2016. In light of the pre-clinical data, we are evaluating the development of RDX8940 for the treatment of patients with NASH and other gastrointestinal indications.

TGR5 is an important receptor present on cells within the GI tract that is activated in response to the bile acids the body secretes in response to the food we ingest. As part of a normal physiological response, the binding of bile acids to TGR5 stimulates the production of critical metabolic hormones such as glucagon-like peptides 1 and 2, or GLP-1 and GLP-2. GLP-1 is involved in maintaining insulin sensitivity and in aiding glucose and lipid metabolism. GLP-2 is involved in maintenance of the structural integrity of the gut as well as its growth.

We believe that endogenous and local secretion of GLP-1 and GLP-2 triggered by the stimulation of TGR5 receptors by an oral TGR5 agonist may have significant therapeutic potential for the treatment of several conditions. Injectable GLP-1 analogs are being evaluated in the treatment of NASH because they are known to improve lipid metabolism in the liver. Injectable stabilized GLP-1 analogs that are commercially available, such as exenatide (Byetta) and liraglutide (Victoza), are commonly used to treat type 2 diabetes, among other metabolic conditions. An injectable, stabilized form of GLP-2, called Gattex (teduglutide), is marketed for short bowel syndrome. GLP-2 stimulates the repair of the gut and improves the structural integrity of gut wall that is damaged in many disease conditions. A leaky gut, and the corresponding systemic inflammation, is also believed to be involved in the pathology of NASH. In all of these cases, GLP-1 and GLP-2 analogs are injectable thus we believe an oral agent that can emulate these effects would be welcome.

Historically one of the limitations for the development of TGR5 agonists has been the observation with systemic compounds that stimulation of TGR5 in the gallbladder results in excess gallbladder filling, potentially increasing the risk of gallstones. Using our approach to design small molecules, we have created novel TGR5 agonist candidates that have extremely low systemic exposure and we have shown that these agents do not result in excess gallbladder filling in preclinical animal models.

RDX8940 has demonstrated proof-of-concept in an animal efficacy model of NASH. We submitted an IND at year-end 2016 to begin evaluation of RDX8940 in healthy adult subjects. This study is designed to include a single dose evaluation of RDX8940 followed by a multiple ascending dose evaluation of RDX8940, with and without DPP-IV inhibitors. Results of this clinical trial will provide important safety assessments, data regarding gut hormone responses such as GLP-1 and GLP-2 and any potential gallbladder effects, all of which will inform our next steps for this program and its potential utility in NASH and other GI disorders.

RDX011 Program: Second-Generation NHE3 Inhibitors

RDX011 is a program in our GI portfolio focused on leveraging our knowledge of NHE3 inhibitors and their effect on sodium and phosphate management as we seek to develop novel products. We also intend to evaluate new indications for tenapanor and other NHE3 inhibitors in order to exploit the unique capabilities and tools we have developed to modulate transport of ions and other processes in the gut.

RDX023 Program: Gut-Biased Farnesoid X Receptor Agonists

The focus of our RDX023 program is on the discovery and development of gut-biased FXR agonists for the treatment of GI and inflammatory diseases. FXR is expressed at high levels in the intestine and liver and plays a

[Table of Contents](#)

central role in the regulation of bile acid and lipid homeostasis. Systemic FXR agonists appear to have limitations based on their potential to have undesirable and negative effects on multiple systems in the body. We are evaluating our differentiated gut-biased RDX023 program molecules in animal models of NASH/nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, or NAFLD, irritable bowel disease, or IBD, bile acid diarrhea and other indications.

We presented data at the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases conference in November 2016 demonstrating proof of concept that a novel, orally administered, intestinal-selective FXR agonist reduced liver steatosis, or infiltration of liver cells with fat, in mice. We intend to designate a lead development candidate from this program in 2017.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Our commercial success depends in part on our ability to obtain and maintain proprietary protection for our drug candidates, manufacturing and process discoveries, and other know-how, to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of others and to prevent others from infringing our proprietary rights. Our policy is to seek to protect our proprietary position by, among other methods, filing U.S. and foreign patent applications related to our proprietary technology, inventions and improvements that are important to the development and operation of our business. We also rely on trade secrets and careful monitoring of our proprietary information to protect aspects of our business that are not amenable to, or that we do not consider appropriate for, patent protection.

As a normal course of business, we pursue composition-of-matter and method-of-use patents for our product candidates in key therapeutic areas. We also seek patent protection for broader structural and functional attributes of our product candidates that enable a minimally-systemic or minimally-systemic profile.

The patent positions of biopharmaceutical companies like us are generally uncertain and involve complex legal, scientific and factual questions. In addition, the coverage claimed in a patent application can be significantly reduced before the patent is issued, and its scope can be reinterpreted after issuance. Consequently, we do not know whether any of our product candidates will be protectable or remain protected by enforceable patents. We cannot predict whether the patent applications we are currently pursuing will issue as patents in any particular jurisdiction or whether the claims of our issued patents will provide sufficient proprietary protection from competitors. Any patents that we hold may be challenged, circumvented or invalidated by third parties. If third parties prepare and file patent applications in the United States that also claim technology or therapeutics to which we have rights, we may have to participate in interference proceedings in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, to determine priority of invention, which would result in substantial costs to us even if the eventual outcome is favorable to us.

The term of individual patents depends upon the legal term of the patents in countries in which they are obtained. In most countries, including the United States, the patent term is generally 20 years from the earliest date of filing a non-provisional patent application in the applicable country. In the United States, a patent's term may, in certain cases, be lengthened by patent term adjustment, which compensates a patentee for administrative delays by the USPTO in examining and granting a patent, or may be shortened if a patent is terminally disclaimed over a commonly owned patent or a patent naming a common inventor and having an earlier expiration date.

In addition, in the United States, the Hatch-Waxman Act permits a patent term extension of up to five years beyond the expiration of a U.S. patent as partial compensation for the patent term lost during the FDA regulatory review process occurring while the patent is in force. A patent extension cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval, and only one patent applicable to each regulatory review period may be extended and only those claims covering the approved drug, a method for using it or a method for manufacturing it may be extended. Similar provisions are available in the European Union and certain other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of a patent that covers an approved drug.

We may rely, in some circumstances, on trade secrets to protect our technology. Although we take steps to protect our proprietary information and trade secrets, including through contractual means with our employees and

[Table of Contents](#)

consultants, third parties may independently develop substantially equivalent proprietary information and techniques or otherwise gain access to our trade secrets or disclose our technology. Thus, we may not be able to meaningfully protect our trade secrets. It is our policy to require our employees, consultants, outside scientific collaboration partners, sponsored researchers and other advisors to execute confidentiality agreements upon the commencement of employment or consulting relationships with us. These agreements provide that all confidential information concerning the business or financial affairs developed or made known to the individual during the course of the individual's relationship with us is to be kept confidential and not disclosed to third parties except in specific circumstances. In the case of employees, the agreements provide that all inventions conceived by the individual, and which are related to our current or planned business or research and development or made during the normal working hours, on our premises or using our equipment or proprietary information, are our exclusive property.

NHE3 patents

Our NHE3 patent portfolio is wholly owned by us. This portfolio includes four issued U.S. patents, two issued Japanese patents, and one issued Mexican patent. These issued patents cover the composition and methods of using tenapanor and are predicted, without extension or adjustment, to expire in 2029. We have related national patent applications pending in Europe, China, India, Israel and a number of other countries. Any patents issuing from these patent applications are also predicted without extension or adjustment to expire in 2029.

Additional U.S. and international patent applications are pending covering additional methods of using tenapanor, and composition of matter and methods of using compounds that we believe may be follow on compounds to tenapanor.

RDX7675

We have an issued patent in the United States that covers the composition of matter of RDX7675, and we have additional patent applications pending in the U.S. and internationally covering the composition and methods of using RDX7675. Our issued patent will provide coverage through 2035 without extensions or adjustments.

RDX8940

We have patent applications pending in the United States and internationally that cover the compositions and methods of using our TGR5 agonists.

MANUFACTURING

To date, we have relied upon third-party contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, to manufacture both the active pharmaceutical ingredient and final drug product dosage forms of our potential drug candidates used as clinical trial material. We expect that we will continue to rely upon CMOs for the manufacture of our clinical trial materials for our own internal programs.

GOVERNMENT REGULATION/FDA

The FDA and comparable regulatory authorities in state and local jurisdictions and in other countries impose substantial and burdensome requirements upon companies involved in the clinical development, manufacture, marketing and distribution of drugs. These agencies and other federal, state and local entities regulate research and development activities and the testing, manufacture, quality control, safety, effectiveness, labeling, storage, record keeping, approval, advertising and promotion, distribution, post-approval monitoring and reporting, sampling, and export and import of our product candidates.

In the United States, the FDA regulates drug products under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, and the FDA's implementing regulations. If we fail to comply with applicable FDA or other requirements at any time during the drug development process, the approval process or after approval, we may become subject to administrative or judicial sanctions. These sanctions could include the FDA's refusal to

[Table of Contents](#)

approve pending applications, license suspension or revocation, withdrawal of an approval, warning letters, product recalls, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, fines, civil penalties or criminal prosecution. Any FDA enforcement action could have a material adverse effect on us. FDA approval is required before any new unapproved drug or dosage form, including a new use of a previously approved drug, can be marketed in the United States.

The process required by the FDA before a drug may be marketed in the United States generally involves:

- completion of extensive preclinical laboratory tests, preclinical animal studies and formulation studies, some performed in accordance with the FDA's current Good Laboratory Practice, or GLP, regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an Investigational New Drug, or IND, application which must become effective before human clinical trials in the United States may begin;
- approval by an independent institutional review board, or IRB, or ethics committee at each clinical trial site before each trial may be initiated;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials in accordance with Good Clinical Practice, or GCP, regulations to establish the safety and efficacy of the drug candidate for each proposed indication;
- submission to the FDA of a new drug application, or NDA;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the drug is produced to assess compliance with current Good Manufacturing Practice, or cGMP, regulations;
- satisfactory completion of a potential review by an FDA advisory committee, if applicable; and
- FDA review and approval of the NDA prior to any commercial marketing, sale or commercial shipment of the drug.

The preclinical and clinical testing and approval process requires substantial time, effort and financial resources, and we cannot be certain that any approvals for our product candidates will be granted on a timely basis, if at all. Nonclinical tests include laboratory evaluation of product chemistry, formulation, stability and toxicity, as well as animal studies to assess the characteristics and potential safety and efficacy of the product. The results of preclinical tests, together with manufacturing information, analytical data and a proposed clinical trial protocol and other information, are submitted as part of an IND to the FDA. Some preclinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA, within the 30-day time period, raises concerns or questions relating to the IND and places the clinical trial on a clinical hold, including concerns that human research subjects will be exposed to unreasonable health risks. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical trial can begin. A separate submission to an existing IND must also be made for each successive clinical trial conducted during product development.

Clinical trials involve the administration of the investigational drug to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the clinical trial, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety and the effectiveness criteria to be used. Each protocol must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND.

An independent IRB or ethics committee for each medical center proposing to conduct a clinical trial must also review and approve a plan for any clinical trial before it can begin at that center and the IRB must monitor the clinical trial until it is completed. The FDA, the IRB, or the sponsor may suspend or discontinue a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Clinical testing also must satisfy extensive GCP requirements, including the requirements for informed consent.

All clinical research performed in the United States in support of an NDA must be authorized in advance by the FDA under the IND regulations and procedures described above. However, a sponsor who wishes to conduct

[Table of Contents](#)

a clinical trial outside the United States may, but need not, obtain FDA authorization to conduct the clinical trial under an IND. If a foreign clinical trial is not conducted under an IND, the sponsor may submit data from the clinical trial to the FDA in support of an NDA so long as the clinical trial is conducted in compliance with GCP and if the FDA is able to validate the data from the study through an onsite inspection, if necessary. GCP includes review and approval by an independent ethics committee, such as an IRB, and obtaining and documenting the freely given informed consent of the subject before study initiation. If the applicant seeks approval of an NDA solely on the basis of foreign data, the FDA will only accept such data if they are applicable to the U.S. population and U.S. medical practice, the studies have been performed by clinical investigators of recognized competence, and the data may be considered valid without the need for an on-site inspection by the FDA, or if the FDA considers such an inspection to be necessary, the FDA is able to validate the data through an on-site inspection or through other appropriate means.

Clinical trials

The clinical investigation of a new drug is typically conducted in three or four phases, which may overlap or be combined, and generally proceed as follows.

- *Phase 1:* Clinical trials are initially conducted in a limited population of subjects to test the drug candidate for safety, dose tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution and excretion in healthy humans or, on occasion, in patients with severe problems or life-threatening diseases to gain an early indication of its effectiveness.
- *Phase 2:* Clinical trials are generally conducted in a limited patient population to evaluate dosage tolerance and appropriate dosage, identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, and evaluate preliminarily the efficacy of the drug for specific targeted indications in patients with the disease or condition under study.
- *Phase 3:* Clinical trials are typically conducted when Phase 2 clinical trials demonstrate that a dose range of the product candidate is effective and has an acceptable safety profile. Phase 3 clinical trials are commonly referred to as “pivotal” studies, which typically denotes a study which presents the data that the FDA or other relevant regulatory agency will use to determine whether or not to approve a drug. Phase 3 clinical trials are generally undertaken with large numbers of patients, such as groups of several hundred to several thousand, to further evaluate dosage, to provide substantial evidence of clinical efficacy and to further test for safety in an expanded and diverse patient population at multiple, geographically-dispersed clinical trial sites.
- *Phase 4:* In some cases, the FDA may condition approval of an NDA for a product candidate on the sponsor’s agreement to conduct additional clinical trials after NDA approval. In other cases, a sponsor may voluntarily conduct additional clinical trials post approval to gain more information about the drug. Such post approval trials are typically referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials.

In the case of a 505(b)(2) NDA, which is a marketing application in which sponsors may rely on investigations that were not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference or use from the person by or for whom the investigations were conducted, some of the abovementioned studies and preclinical studies may not be required or may be abbreviated. Bridging studies may be needed, however, to demonstrate the applicability of the studies that were previously conducted by other sponsors to the drug that is the subject of the marketing application.

Concurrent with clinical trials, companies usually complete additional preclinical studies and must also develop additional information about the chemistry and physical characteristics of the drug and finalize a process for manufacturing the drug in commercial quantities in accordance with GMP requirements. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the drug candidate and, among other things, the manufacturer must develop methods for testing the identity, strength, quality and purity of the final drug product. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the drug candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its shelf life.

[Table of Contents](#)

The FDA, the IRB or the clinical trial sponsor may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk.

Additionally, some clinical trials are overseen by an independent group of qualified experts organized by the clinical trial sponsor, known as a data safety monitoring board or committee. This group provides authorization for whether or not a trial may move forward at designated check points based on access to certain data from the study. We may also suspend or terminate a clinical trial based on evolving business objectives and/or competitive climate.

New drug applications

The results of preclinical studies and of the clinical trials, together with other detailed information, including extensive manufacturing information and information on the composition of the drug, are submitted to the FDA in the form of an NDA requesting approval to market the drug for one or more specified indications. The FDA reviews an NDA to determine, among other things, whether a drug is safe and effective for its intended use.

Under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, the FDA has a goal of responding to standard review NDAs of new molecular entities within ten months after the 60-day filing review period, or six months after the 60-day filing review period for priority review NDAs, but this timeframe is often extended by FDA requests for additional information or clarification. The FDA may refer the application to an advisory committee for review, evaluation and recommendation as to whether the application should be approved. The FDA is not bound by the recommendation of an advisory committee, but it generally follows such recommendations.

Before approving an application, the FDA will inspect the facility or the facilities at which the finished drug product, and sometimes the active pharmaceutical ingredient, or API, is manufactured, and will not approve the drug unless cGMP compliance is satisfactory. The FDA may also inspect the sites at which the clinical trials were conducted to assess their compliance, and will not approve the drug unless compliance with cGCP requirements is satisfactory.

After the FDA evaluates the NDA and conducts inspections of manufacturing facilities where the drug product and/or its API will be produced, it may issue an approval letter or a Complete Response Letter. An approval letter authorizes commercial marketing of the drug with specific prescribing information for specific indications. A Complete Response Letter indicates that the review cycle of the application is complete and the application is not ready for approval. A Complete Response Letter may require additional clinical data and/or an additional pivotal Phase 3 clinical trial(s), and/or other significant, expensive and time-consuming requirements related to clinical trials, preclinical studies or manufacturing. Even if such additional information is submitted, the FDA may ultimately decide that the NDA does not satisfy the criteria for approval. The FDA could also approve the NDA with a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS, plan to mitigate risks, which could include medication guides, physician communication plans, or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries and other risk minimization tools. The FDA also may condition approval on, among other things, changes to proposed labeling, development of adequate controls and specifications, or a commitment to conduct one or more post-market studies or clinical trials. Such post-market testing may include Phase 4 clinical trials and surveillance to further assess and monitor the product's safety and effectiveness after commercialization. The FDA has the authority to prevent or limit further marketing of a drug based on the results of these post-marketing programs. Once the FDA approves an NDA, or supplement thereto, the FDA may withdraw the approval if ongoing regulatory requirements are not met or if safety problems are identified after the drug reaches the market.

Drugs may be marketed only for the FDA approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling. Further, if there are any modifications to the drug, including changes in indications, labeling, or manufacturing processes or facilities, the applicant may be required to submit and obtain FDA approval of a new NDA or NDA supplement, which may require the applicant to develop additional data or conduct additional preclinical studies and clinical trials.

The testing and approval processes require substantial time, effort and financial resources, and each may take several years to complete. The FDA may not grant approval on a timely basis, or at all. Even if we believe a

[Table of Contents](#)

clinical trial has demonstrated safety and efficacy of one of our drug candidates for the proposed indication, the results may not be satisfactory to the FDA. Nonclinical and clinical data may be interpreted by the FDA in different ways, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. We may encounter difficulties or unanticipated costs in our efforts to secure necessary governmental approvals which could delay or preclude us from marketing drugs. The FDA may limit the indications for use or place other conditions on any approvals that could restrict the commercial application of the drugs. After approval, certain changes to the approved drug, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes, or additional labeling claims are subject to further FDA review and approval. Depending on the nature of the change proposed, an NDA supplement must be filed and approved before the change may be implemented. For many proposed post-approval changes to an NDA, but excluding efficacy supplements to an NDA, the FDA has up to 180 days to review the application. As with new NDAs, the review process is often significantly extended by the FDA requests for additional information or clarification.

Other regulatory requirements

Any drugs manufactured or distributed by us or our collaboration partners pursuant to FDA approvals would be subject to continuing regulation by the FDA, including recordkeeping requirements and reporting of adverse experiences associated with the drug. Drug manufacturers and their subcontractors are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic announced and unannounced inspections by the FDA and certain state agencies for compliance with ongoing regulatory requirements, including cGMP, which impose certain procedural and documentation requirements upon us and our third party manufacturers. Failure to comply with the statutory and regulatory requirements can subject a manufacturer to possible legal or regulatory action, such as warning letters, suspension of manufacturing, seizure of product, injunctive action or possible civil penalties. We cannot be certain that we or our present or future third party manufacturers or suppliers will be able to comply with the cGMP regulations and other ongoing FDA regulatory requirements. If we or our present or future third party manufacturers or suppliers are not able to comply with these requirements, the FDA may, among other things, halt our clinical trials, require us to recall a drug from distribution or withdraw approval of the NDA for that drug.

The FDA closely regulates the post-approval marketing and promotion of drugs, including standards and regulations for direct-to-consumer advertising, off-label promotion, industry-sponsored scientific and educational activities and promotional activities involving the Internet. A company can make only those claims relating to safety and efficacy that are approved by the FDA. Failure to comply with these requirements can result in, among other things, adverse publicity, warning letters, corrective advertising and potential civil and criminal penalties. Physicians may prescribe legally available drugs for uses that are not described in the product's labeling and that differ from those tested by us and approved by the FDA. Such off-label uses are common across medical specialties. Physicians may believe that such off-label uses are the best treatment for many patients in varied circumstances. The FDA does not regulate the behavior of physicians in their choice of treatments. The FDA does, however, impose stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use.

Hatch-Waxman Act

Section 505 of the FDCA describes three types of marketing applications that may be submitted to the FDA to request marketing authorization for a new drug. A Section 505(b)(1) NDA is an application that contains full reports of investigations of safety and efficacy. A 505(b)(2) NDA is an application that contains full reports of investigations of safety and efficacy but where at least some of the information required for approval comes from investigations that were not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference or use from the person by or for whom the investigations were conducted. This regulatory pathway enables the applicant to rely, in part, on the FDA's prior findings of safety and efficacy for an existing product, or published literature, in support of its application. Section 505(j) establishes an abbreviated approval process for a generic version of approved drug products through the submission of an Abbreviated New Drug Application, or ANDA. An ANDA provides for marketing of a generic drug product that has the same active ingredients, dosage form, strength, route of administration, labeling, performance characteristics and intended

[Table of Contents](#)

use, among other things, to a previously approved product. ANDAs are termed “abbreviated” because they are generally not required to include preclinical (animal) and clinical (human) data to establish safety and efficacy. Instead, generic applicants must scientifically demonstrate that their product is bioequivalent to, or performs in the same manner as, the innovator drug through in vitro, in vivo, or other testing. The generic version must deliver the same amount of active ingredients into a subject’s bloodstream in the same amount of time as the innovator drug and can often be substituted by pharmacists under prescriptions written for the reference listed drug. In seeking approval for a drug through an NDA, applicants are required to list with the FDA each patent with claims that cover the applicant’s drug or a method of using the drug. Upon approval of a drug, each of the patents listed in the application for the drug is then published in the FDA’s Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations, commonly known as the Orange Book. Drugs listed in the Orange Book can, in turn, be cited by potential competitors in support of approval of an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA.

Upon submission of an ANDA or a 505(b)(2) NDA, an applicant must certify to the FDA that (1) no patent information on the drug product that is the subject of the application has been submitted to the FDA; (2) such patent has expired; (3) the date on which such patent expires; or (4) such patent is invalid or will not be infringed upon by the manufacture, use or sale of the drug product for which the application is submitted. Generally, the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA cannot be approved until all listed patents have expired, except where the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant challenges a listed patent through the last type of certification, also known as a paragraph IV certification. If the applicant does not challenge the listed patents or indicates that it is not seeking approval of a patented method of use, the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA application will not be approved until all of the listed patents claiming the referenced product have expired.

If the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant has provided a Paragraph IV certification to the FDA, the applicant must send notice of the Paragraph IV certification to the NDA and patent holders once the application has been accepted for filing by the FDA. The NDA and patent holders may then initiate a patent infringement lawsuit in response to the notice of the paragraph IV certification. If the paragraph IV certification is challenged by an NDA holder or the patent owner(s) asserts a patent challenge to the paragraph IV certification, the FDA may not approve that application until the earlier of 30 months from the receipt of the notice of the paragraph IV certification, the expiration of the patent, when the infringement case concerning each such patent was favorably decided in the applicant’s favor or settled, or such shorter or longer period as may be ordered by a court. This prohibition is generally referred to as the 30-month stay. In instances where an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant files a paragraph IV certification, the NDA holder or patent owner(s) regularly take action to trigger the 30-month stay, recognizing that the related patent litigation may take many months or years to resolve. Thus, approval of an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA could be delayed for a significant period of time depending on the patent certification the applicant makes and the reference drug sponsor’s decision to initiate patent litigation.

The Hatch-Waxman Act establishes periods of regulatory exclusivity for certain approved drug products, during which the FDA cannot approve (or in some cases accept) an ANDA or 505(b)(2) application that relies on the branded reference drug. For example, the holder of an NDA, including a 505(b)(2) NDA, may obtain five years of exclusivity upon approval of a new drug containing new chemical entities, or NCEs, that have not been previously approved by the FDA. A drug is a new chemical entity if the FDA has not previously approved any other new drug containing the same active moiety, which is the molecule or ion responsible for the therapeutic activity of the drug substance. During the exclusivity period, the FDA may not accept for review an ANDA or a 505(b)(2) NDA submitted by another company that contains the previously approved active moiety. However, an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA may be submitted after four years if it contains a certification of patent invalidity or non-infringement.

The Hatch-Waxman Act also provides three years of marketing exclusivity to the holder of an NDA (including a 505(b)(2) NDA) for a particular condition of approval, or change to a marketed product, such as a new formulation for a previously approved product, if one or more new clinical studies (other than bioavailability or bioequivalence studies) was essential to the approval of the application and was conducted/sponsored by the applicant. This three-year exclusivity period protects against FDA approval of ANDAs and 505(b)(2) NDAs for the condition of the new drug’s approval. As a general matter, the three-year exclusivity does not prohibit the

[Table of Contents](#)

FDA from approving ANDAs or 505(b)(2) NDAs for generic versions of the original, unmodified drug product. Five-year and three-year exclusivity will not delay the submission or approval of a full NDA; however, an applicant submitting a full NDA would be required to conduct or obtain a right of reference to all of the preclinical studies and adequate and well-controlled clinical trials necessary to demonstrate safety and efficacy.

Fraud and abuse laws

In the United States, the research, manufacturing, distribution, sale and promotion of drug products and medical devices are potentially subject to regulation by various federal, state and local authorities in addition to the FDA, including the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, other divisions of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (e.g., the Office of Inspector General), the U.S. Department of Justice, state Attorneys General, and other state and local government agencies. These laws include but are not limited to, the Anti-Kickback Statute, the federal False Claims Act, the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, and other state and federal laws and regulations.

The Anti-Kickback Statute makes it illegal for any person, including a prescription drug manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf) to knowingly and willfully solicit, receive, offer, or pay any remuneration that is intended to induce the referral of business, including the purchase, order, or prescription of a particular drug, for which payment may be made under a federal healthcare program, such as Medicare or Medicaid. Violations of this law are punishable by up to five years in prison, criminal fines, administrative civil money penalties, and exclusion from participation in federal healthcare programs. In addition, the Affordable Care Act, among other things, amends the intent requirement of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and federal criminal healthcare fraud statutes. A person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it. Moreover, the Affordable Care Act provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal anti-kickback statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act.

The federal False Claims Act prohibits anyone from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, for payment to federal programs (including Medicare and Medicaid) claims for items or services, including drugs, that are false or fraudulent, claims for items or services not provided as claimed, or claims for medically unnecessary items or services. Although we would not submit claims directly to payors, manufacturers can be held liable under these laws if they are deemed to “cause” the submission of false or fraudulent claims by, for example, providing inaccurate billing or coding information to customers or promoting a product off-label. In addition, our future activities relating to the reporting of wholesaler or estimated retail prices for our products, the reporting of prices used to calculate Medicaid rebate information and other information affecting federal, state, and third-party reimbursement for our products, and the sale and marketing of our products, are subject to scrutiny under this law. For example, pharmaceutical companies have been prosecuted under the federal False Claims Act in connection with their off-label promotion of drugs. Penalties for a False Claims Act violation include three times the actual damages sustained by the government, plus mandatory civil penalties of between \$10,781 and \$21,563 for each separate false claim, the potential for exclusion from participation in federal healthcare programs, and, although the federal False Claims Act is a civil statute, conduct that results in a False Claims Act violation may also implicate various federal criminal statutes. If the government were to allege that we were, or convict us of, violating these false claims laws, we could be subject to a substantial fine and may suffer a decline in our stock price. In addition, private individuals have the ability to bring actions under the federal False Claims Act and certain states have enacted laws modeled after the federal False Claims Act.

In addition to the laws described above, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act, collectively known as the Affordable Care Act, also imposed new reporting requirements on drug manufacturers for payments made to physicians and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. Failure to submit required information may result in civil monetary penalties of up to an aggregate of \$150,000 per year (or up to an aggregate of \$1 million per year for “knowing failures”), for all payments, transfers of value or ownership or

[Table of Contents](#)

investment interests that are not timely, accurately and completely reported in an annual submission. Manufacturers must submit reports by the 90th day of each subsequent calendar year.

Many states have also adopted laws similar to the federal laws discussed above. Some of these state prohibitions apply to the referral of patients for healthcare services reimbursed by any insurer, not just federal healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid. There has also been a recent trend of increased regulation of payments made to physicians and other healthcare providers. Certain states mandate implementation of compliance programs, impose restrictions on drug manufacturers' marketing practices and/or require the tracking and reporting of pricing and marketing information as well as gifts, compensation and other remuneration to physicians. Many of these laws contain ambiguities as to what is required to comply with such laws, which may affect our sales, marketing, and other promotional activities by imposing administrative and compliance burdens on us. In addition, given the lack of clarity with respect to these laws and their implementation, our reporting actions could be subject to the penalty provisions of the pertinent state and perhaps federal, authorities.

Because we intend to commercialize products that could be reimbursed under a federal healthcare program and other governmental healthcare programs, we plan to develop a comprehensive compliance program that establishes internal controls to facilitate adherence to the rules and program requirements to which we will or may become subject. Although compliance programs can mitigate the risk of investigation and prosecution for violations of these laws, the risks cannot be entirely eliminated. Due to the breadth of these laws, the absence of guidance in the form of regulations or court decisions, and the potential for additional legal or regulatory change in this area, it is possible that our future sales and marketing practices and/or our future relationships with physicians and other healthcare providers might be challenged under such laws. Any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert our management's attention from the operation of our business.

Third-party coverage and reimbursement

Sales of pharmaceutical products depend in significant part on the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement by third-party payors, such as state and federal governments, including Medicare and Medicaid, and commercial managed care providers. In the United States, no uniform policy of coverage and reimbursement for drug products exists among third-party payors. Accordingly, decisions regarding the extent of coverage and amount of reimbursement to be provided for our product candidates, if approved, will be made on a payor by payor basis. As a result, the coverage determination process is often a time-consuming and costly process that will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our product candidates to each payor separately, with no assurance that coverage and adequate reimbursement will be obtained. Third-party payors may limit coverage to specific drug products on an approved list, or formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved drugs for a particular indication. A decision by a third-party payor not to cover our product candidates could reduce physician utilization of our products once approved and have a material adverse effect on our future sales, results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, a payor's decision to provide coverage for a drug product does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

In addition, in July 2010, CMS released its final rule to implement a bundled prospective payment system for the treatment of ESRD patients as required by the Medicare Improvements for Patients and Providers Act, or MIPPA. The bundled payment includes all renal dialysis services furnished for outpatient maintenance dialysis, including ESRD-related drugs and biologicals. The final rule delayed the inclusion of oral medications without intravenous equivalents in the bundled payment until January 1, 2014 and in April 2014, and due to subsequent legislative amendments, such inclusion will remain delayed until January 1, 2025. Unless additional Congressional action is taken, beginning in 2025 ESRD-related drugs will be included in the bundle and separate Medicare reimbursement will no longer be available for such drugs, as it is today under Medicare Part D. While it is too early to project the full impact bundling may have on the phosphate binder industry, the impact could potentially cause dramatic price reductions for tenapanor, if approved.

[Table of Contents](#)

Healthcare reform

In March 2010, Congress passed and President Obama signed into law, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, a healthcare reform measure, often called, the Affordable Care Act. The Affordable Care Act substantially changes the way healthcare is financed by both governmental and private insurers, and significantly impacts the pharmaceutical industry.

The Affordable Care Act contains a number of provisions, including those governing enrollment in federal healthcare programs, reimbursement changes and fraud and abuse measures, which impacted existing government healthcare programs and have resulted in the development of new programs, including Medicare payment for performance initiatives and improvements to the physician quality reporting system and feedback program.

Additionally, the Affordable Care Act:

- increases the minimum level of Medicaid rebates payable by manufacturers of brand-name drugs from 15.1% to 23.1%;
- requires collection of rebates for drugs paid by Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expands eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories for certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby potentially increasing a manufacturer's Medicaid rebate liability;
- expands access to commercial health insurance coverage through new state-based health insurance marketplaces, or exchanges;
- requires manufacturers to participate in a coverage gap discount program, under which they must agree to offer 50 percent point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D, beginning January 2011; and
- imposes a non-deductible annual fee on pharmaceutical manufacturers or importers who sell "branded prescription drugs" to specified federal government programs.

We expect that the new presidential administration and U.S. Congress will seek to modify, repeal, or otherwise invalidate all or certain provisions of, the Affordable Care Act. Since taking office, President Trump has continued to support the repeal of all or portions of the Affordable Care Act. In January 2017, the House and Senate passed a budget resolution that authorizes congressional committees to draft legislation to repeal all or portions of the Affordable Care Act and permits such legislation to pass with a majority vote in the Senate. President Trump has also recently issued an executive order in which he stated that it is his administration's policy to seek the prompt repeal of the Affordable Care Act and directed executive departments and federal agencies to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of the provisions of the Affordable Care Act to the maximum extent permitted by law. There is still uncertainty with respect to the impact President Trump's administration and the U.S. Congress may have, if any, and any changes will likely take time to unfold, and could have an impact on coverage and reimbursement for healthcare items and services covered by plans that were authorized by the Affordable Care Act.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. In August 2011, the Budget Control Act of 2011 among other things, created the Joint Select Committee on Deficit Reduction to recommend proposals in spending reductions to Congress. The Joint Select Committee did not achieve its targeted deficit reduction of at least \$1.2 trillion for the years 2013 through 2021, triggering the legislation's automatic reduction to several government programs. This includes aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2 percent per fiscal year, which went into effect on April 1, 2013, and, due to subsequent legislative amendments, will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional Congressional action is taken. In January 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act was enacted,

[Table of Contents](#)

which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. Recently, there has also been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which has resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products. These new laws and the regulations and policies implementing them, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may have a material adverse effect on our industry generally and on our ability to successfully develop and commercialize our products.

Other regulations

We are also subject to numerous federal, state and local laws relating to such matters as safe working conditions, manufacturing practices, environmental protection, fire hazard control, and disposal of hazardous or potentially hazardous substances. We may incur significant costs to comply with such laws and regulations now or in the future.

EMPLOYEES

As of December 31, 2016, we had 93 full-time employees, including a total of 23 employees with Ph.D. degrees. Within our workforce, 68 employees are engaged in research and development and the remaining 25 in general management and administration, including finance, legal, and business development. None of our employees are represented by labor unions or covered by collective bargaining agreements. We believe that we maintain good relations with our employees.

RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

Our research and development costs were \$94.2 million, \$39.9 million and \$25.9 million in the years 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. See “**ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**” for additional detail regarding our research and development activities.

CORPORATE INFORMATION

We were incorporated in Delaware on October 17, 2007, under the name Nteryx and changed our name to Ardelyx, Inc. in June 2008. We operate in only one business segment, which is the research, development and commercialization of biopharmaceutical products. See Note 1 to our financial statements included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Our principal offices are located at 34175 Ardenwood Blvd., Suite 200, Fremont, CA 94555, and our telephone number is (510) 745-1700. Our website address is www.ardelyx.com.

We file electronically with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and current reports on Form 8-K pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. We make available on our website at www.ardelyx.com, free of charge, copies of these reports, as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. The public may read or copy any materials we file with the SEC at the SEC’s Public Reference Room at 100 F Street NE, Washington, D.C. 20549. The public may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. The SEC maintains a website that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers that file electronically with the SEC. The address of that website is www.sec.gov.

ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

Our business involves significant risks, some of which are described below. You should carefully consider these risks, as well as other information in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, including our financial statements and

[Table of Contents](#)

the related notes and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.” The occurrence of any of the events or developments described below could harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows, the trading price of our common stock and our growth prospects. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also impair our business operations.

Risks Related to Our Limited Operating History, Financial Condition and Capital Requirements

We have a limited operating history, have incurred significant losses since our inception and we will incur losses in the future, which makes it difficult to assess our future viability.

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. Biopharmaceutical product development is a highly speculative undertaking and involves a substantial degree of risk. To date, we have focused substantially all of our efforts on our research and development activities, including developing our clinical product candidates, tenapanor and RDX7675, and developing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. To date, we have not commercialized any products or generated any revenue from the sale of products.

We are not profitable and have incurred losses in each year since our inception in October 2007, and we do not know whether or when we will become profitable. We have only a limited operating history upon which to evaluate our business and prospects. We continue to incur significant research, development and other expenses related to our ongoing operations. As of December 31, 2016, we had an accumulated deficit of \$ 213.9 million.

We expect that our operating losses will substantially increase for the foreseeable future as we prepare for the commercialization of tenapanor and RDX7675, incur manufacturing and development costs for tenapanor, RDX7675, and RDX8940, including costs associated with completing the on-going Phase 3 development of tenapanor in IBS-C and in hyperphosphatemia, completing the on-going onset-of-action trial and the Phase 3 clinical trials for RDX7675, and commencing clinical development of RDX8940, and as we continue our discovery and research activities.

Our prior losses, combined with expected future losses, have had and will continue to have an adverse effect on our stockholders’ equity and working capital. Further, the net losses we incur may fluctuate significantly from quarter to quarter and year to year, such that a period-to-period comparison of our results of operations may not be a good indication of our future performance.

We have substantial net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards for Federal and California income tax purposes. Such net operating losses and tax credits carryforwards may be reduced as a result of certain intercompany restructuring transactions. In addition, the future utilization of such net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards and credits may be subject to limitations, pursuant to Internal Revenue Code Sections 382 and 383, as a result of ownership changes that may have occurred previously or that could occur in the future.

We have never generated any revenue from product sales and may never be profitable.

We have no products approved for sale and have never generated any revenue from product sales. Our ability to generate revenue from product sales and achieve profitability depends on our ability to successfully complete the development of and obtain the regulatory and marketing approvals necessary to commercialize one or more of our product candidates. We do not anticipate generating revenue from product sales for the foreseeable future. Our ability to generate future revenue from product sales or pursuant to milestone payments depends heavily on many factors, including but not limited to:

- the successful completion of nonclinical and clinical development of our product candidates;
- obtaining regulatory approvals for our product candidates, either on our own, or with one or more collaboration partners;
- our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates, either on our own, or with one or more collaboration partners;

[Table of Contents](#)

- developing a sustainable and scalable manufacturing process for any approved product candidates and establishing and maintaining supply and manufacturing relationships with third parties that can provide an adequate (in amount and quality) supply of product to support clinical development and the market demand for our product candidates, if approved;
- obtaining market acceptance of our product candidates, if approved, as viable treatment options;
- addressing any competing technological and market developments;
- identifying, assessing, acquiring, in-licensing and/or developing new product candidates;
- negotiating favorable terms in any collaboration partnership, licensing or other arrangements into which we may enter;
- maintaining, protecting, and expanding our portfolio of intellectual property rights, including patents, trade secrets, and know-how, and our ability to develop, manufacture and commercialize our product candidates and products without infringing intellectual property rights of others; and
- attracting, hiring, and retaining qualified personnel.

In cases where we are successful in obtaining regulatory approvals to market one or more of our product candidates, our revenue will be dependent, in part, upon the size of the markets in the territories for which regulatory approval is granted, the accepted price for the product, the ability to get reimbursement at any price and whether we are commercializing the product or the product is being commercialized by a collaboration partner, and in such case, whether we have royalty and/or co-promotion rights for that territory. If the number of patients suitable for our product candidates is not as significant as we estimate, the indication approved by regulatory authorities is narrower than we expect, or the reasonably accepted population for treatment is narrowed by competition, physician choice or treatment guidelines, we may not generate significant revenue from the sale of such products, even if approved. Even if we achieve profitability in the future, we may not be able to sustain profitability in subsequent periods. Our failure to generate revenue from product sales would likely depress our market value and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, discover or develop other product candidates or continue our operations. A decline in the value of our common stock could cause our stockholders to lose all or part of their investment.

We will require substantial additional financing to achieve our goals, and a failure to obtain this necessary capital when needed on acceptable terms, or at all, could force us to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our planned clinical programs for tenapanor, RDX7675, RDX8940 or our other product development and platform development activities.

Since our inception, most of our resources have been dedicated to our research and development activities, including developing our clinical product candidates, tenapanor, RDX7675, and RDX8940, and developing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. We believe that we will continue to expend substantial resources for the foreseeable future, including costs associated with conducting the clinical programs for tenapanor, RDX7675, and RDX8940, research and development, conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials for our other programs, obtaining regulatory approvals, developing and maintaining scalable manufacturing processes for our product candidates and sales and marketing. Because the outcome of any clinical trial and/or regulatory approval process is highly uncertain, we cannot reasonably estimate the actual amounts necessary to successfully complete the development, regulatory approval process and commercialization or co-promotion of any of our product candidates. Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including, but not limited to:

- the progress, timing, scope, results and costs of our clinical trial programs evaluating tenapanor in IBS-C and for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis as well as our decision whether or not to pursue other indications for tenapanor;
- the progress, timing, scope, results and costs of our clinical program for RDX7675 and RDX8940;
- the time and cost necessary to obtain regulatory approvals for our product candidates and the costs of post-marketing studies that could be required by regulatory authorities;

[Table of Contents](#)

- our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates, either alone or with one or more collaboration partners;
- the manufacturing costs of our product candidates, and the availability of one or more suppliers for our product candidates at reasonable costs, both for clinical and commercial supply;
- the selling and marketing costs associated with product candidates, including the cost and timing of building our sales and marketing capabilities;
- our ability to establish and maintain collaboration partnerships, in-license/out-license or other similar arrangements and the financial terms of such agreements;
- the timing, receipt, and amount of sales of, or royalties on, our future products, if any;
- the sales price and the availability of adequate third-party reimbursement for our product candidates;
- the cash requirements of any future acquisitions or discovery of product candidates;
- the number and scope of preclinical and discovery programs that we decide to pursue or initiate, and any clinical trials we decide to pursue for other product candidates;
- the time and cost necessary to respond to technological and market developments; and
- the costs of filing, prosecuting, maintaining, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights, including litigation costs and the outcome of such litigation, including costs of defending any claims of infringement brought by others in connection with the development, manufacture or commercialization of our product candidates.

Additional funds may not be available when we need them on terms that are acceptable to us, or at all. If adequate funds are not available to us on a timely basis, we may be required to delay the clinical development of tenapanor, RDX7675 or RDX8940, delay, limit, reduce or terminate our research activities, preclinical and clinical trials for our other product candidates and our establishment and maintenance of sales and marketing capabilities or other activities that may be necessary to commercialize our product candidates, either alone or with a collaboration partner.

Risks Related to Our Business

We are substantially dependent on the success of our lead product candidate, tenapanor, which may not be successful in nonclinical studies or clinical trials, receive regulatory approval or be successfully commercialized.

To date, we have invested a significant amount of our efforts and financial resources in the research and development of tenapanor, which is currently our lead product candidate and one of only two product candidates in clinical trials. The clinical and commercial success of tenapanor will depend on a number of factors, including the following:

- our ability to, in a timely manner and under terms that are acceptable to us, to establish one or more collaborative relationships for the commercialization of tenapanor;
- the ability of the third-party manufacturers we contract with, to successfully execute and scale up the manufacturing processes for tenapanor, which has not yet been demonstrated, and to manufacture supplies of tenapanor and to develop, validate and maintain commercially viable manufacturing processes that are compliant with cGMP, requirements;
- whether the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities require additional nonclinical and/or clinical studies, which could delay the commercialization of tenapanor;
- whether the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities require us to conduct clinical trials in addition to those anticipated prior to approval to market tenapanor;
- whether we will be required to conduct clinical trials in addition to those anticipated to obtain adequate commercial pricing;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the prevalence and severity of adverse side effects of tenapanor;
- whether tenapanor's safety and efficacy profile is satisfactory to the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities to gain marketing approval;
- the timely receipt of necessary marketing approvals from the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities;
- our ability, either alone, or with a collaboration partner, to successfully commercialize tenapanor, if approved for marketing and sale by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities, including educating physicians and patients about the benefits, administration and use of tenapanor;
- achieving and maintaining compliance with all regulatory requirements applicable to tenapanor;
- acceptance of tenapanor as safe, effective and well-tolerated by patients and the medical community;
- our ability to manage the complex pricing and reimbursement negotiations associated with marketing the same product at different doses for separate indications, if tenapanor is approved for marketing and sale by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities for both IBS-C and hyperphosphatemia in dialysis patients;
- the availability, perceived advantages, relative cost, relative safety and relative efficacy of alternative and competing treatments;
- obtaining and sustaining an adequate level of coverage and reimbursement for tenapanor by third-party payors;
- enforcing intellectual property rights in and to tenapanor;
- avoiding third-party interference, opposition, derivation or similar proceedings with respect to our patent rights, and avoiding other challenges to our patent rights and patent infringement claims; and
- a continued acceptable safety and tolerability profile of tenapanor following approval.

As tenapanor is a first-in-class drug, there is a higher likelihood that approval may not be attained as compared to a class of drugs with approved products. We cannot be certain that tenapanor will be successful in non-clinical safety studies or clinical trials, or that it will receive regulatory approval. Further, it may not be possible or practicable to demonstrate, or if approved, to market on the basis of, certain of the benefits we believe tenapanor possesses. For example, the reduction of serum phosphorus is currently an approvable endpoint in ESRD patients on dialysis, but not for the broader CKD patient population in the United States. If the number of patients in the market for tenapanor or the price that the market can bear is not as significant as we estimate, we may not generate sufficient revenue from sales of tenapanor, if approved. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that tenapanor will ever be successfully commercialized or that we will ever generate income from sales of tenapanor. If we are not successful in completing the development of, obtaining approval for, and commercializing tenapanor, or are significantly delayed in doing so, our business will be materially harmed.

Clinical drug development involves a lengthy and expensive process with an uncertain outcome, and we may encounter substantial delays in our clinical studies. Furthermore, results of earlier studies and trials may not be predictive of future trial results.

Before obtaining marketing approval from regulatory authorities for the sale of our product candidates, we must conduct extensive clinical studies to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the product candidates in humans. Clinical testing is expensive and can take many years to complete, and its outcome is inherently uncertain. Failure can occur at any time during the clinical trial process. The results of preclinical and clinical studies of our product candidates may not be predictive of the results of later-stage clinical trials. An unexpected adverse event profile, or the results of drug-drug interaction studies, may present challenges for the future development and commercialization of a product candidate for a particular condition despite receipt of positive efficacy data in a clinical study. Product candidates in later stages of clinical trials, such as tenapanor, which is being evaluated in two Phase 3 clinical trial programs, may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy despite having progressed through preclinical studies and initial clinical trials. A number of companies in the

[Table of Contents](#)

pharmaceutical, biopharmaceutical and biotechnology industries have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials for similar indications that we are pursuing due to lack of efficacy or adverse safety profiles, notwithstanding promising results in earlier studies, and we cannot be certain that we will not face similar setbacks. Even if our clinical trials are completed, the results may not be sufficient to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, or if such regulatory approval is obtained, the content of the label approved by regulatory authorities may materially and adversely impact our ability to commercialize the product.

We do not know whether future clinical trials will begin on time, or whether our ongoing or future clinical trials will need to be redesigned, enroll an adequate number of patients on time or be completed on schedule, if at all. Clinical trials can be delayed or terminated for a variety of reasons, including delay or failure to:

- manufacture sufficient quantities of product candidate meeting specified quality standards for use in clinical trials;
- obtain regulatory approval to commence a trial, if applicable;
- reach agreement on acceptable terms with prospective contract research organizations, or CROs, and clinical trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;
- obtain institutional review board, or IRB, approval at each site;
- recruit suitable patients in a timely manner to participate in our trials;
- have patients complete a trial or return for post-treatment follow-up;
- ensure that clinical sites observe trial protocol, comply with good clinical practices, or GCPs, or continue to participate in a trial;
- address any patient safety concerns that arise during the course of a trial;
- address any conflicts with new or existing laws or regulations; or
- initiate or add a sufficient number of clinical trial sites.

Patient enrollment is a significant factor in the timing of clinical trials and is affected by many factors, including the size and nature of the patient population, the proximity of patients to clinical sites, the eligibility criteria for the trial, the design of the clinical trial, competing clinical trials and clinicians' and patients' perceptions as to the potential advantages of the drug being studied in relation to other available therapies, including any new drugs or treatments that may be approved for the indications we are investigating.

We could also encounter delays if a clinical trial is suspended or terminated by us, by the IRBs of the institutions in which such trials are being conducted, by an independent data safety monitoring board for such trial or by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. Such authorities may suspend or terminate a clinical trial due to a number of factors, including failure to conduct the clinical trial in accordance with regulatory requirements or our clinical protocols, inspection of the clinical trial operations or trial site by the FDA or other regulatory authorities resulting in the imposition of a clinical hold, unforeseen safety issues or adverse side effects, failure to demonstrate a benefit from using a drug, changes in governmental regulations or administrative actions or lack of adequate funding to continue the clinical trial.

Further, if there are delays in the completion of, or termination of, any clinical trial of our product candidates, the commercial prospects of our product candidates may be harmed, and our ability to generate revenue from product sales from any of these product candidates will be delayed. In addition, any delays in completing the clinical trials will increase costs, slow down our product candidate development and approval process and jeopardize the ability to commence product sales and generate revenue from product sales. Any of these occurrences may significantly harm our business, financial condition and prospects. In addition, many of the factors that cause, or lead to, a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of our product candidates.

[Table of Contents](#)

We intend to devote significant resources to the development of RDX7675 which may not be successful in nonclinical studies or clinical trials, receive regulatory approval or be successfully commercialized.

With the advancement of RDX7675 into both an onset-of-action clinical trial and a Phase 3 clinical trial for RDX7675 in the fourth quarter of 2016, we expect to invest a significant amount of our efforts and financial resources in the development of RDX7675. We are pursuing a 505(b)(2) regulatory path for approval of RDX7675, which, among other things allows us to rely on the FDA's previous findings of safety and efficacy and may eliminate the need to conduct certain nonclinical and clinical studies of our product candidate. This regulatory pathway, which can accelerate development, may not be available to us if a pharmaceutically equivalent product to RDX7675 were approved prior to the approval of our 505(b)(2) application. If we are unable to rely upon a 505(b)(2) regulatory pathway for the approval of RDX7675, the development of RDX7675 may be substantially delayed or we may be required to abandon such development.

The clinical and commercial success of RDX7675 will depend on a number of factors, including the following:

- the ability of the third-party manufacturers we contract with, to successfully develop and scale up the manufacturing processes for RDX7675, which has not yet been demonstrated, to manufacture supplies of RDX7675 and to develop, validate and maintain commercially viable manufacturing processes that are compliant with cGMP, requirements;
- the significant expansion of the market for the treatment of hyperkalemia beyond its currently limited size, including the success of commercial launches of new hyperkalemia products and the use of any such products by nephrologists and cardiologists in the chronic setting;
- our ability to successfully obtain labeling claims necessary or desirable for the commercial success of RDX7675;
- the availability of, and the perceived advantages regarding the relative palatability, relative cost, relative safety, relative tolerance and relative efficacy of alternative and competing treatments;
- the strength and breadth of any intellectual property protection that we have or may be granted for RDX7675, and our enforcement of any intellectual property rights in RDX7675;
- the timely receipt of necessary marketing approvals and exclusivity periods, if any, from the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities;
- our ability to successfully commercialize RDX7675, if approved for marketing and sale by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities, including educating physicians and patients about the benefits, administration and use of RDX7675;
- obtaining and sustaining an adequate level of coverage and reimbursement for RDX7675 by third-party payors; and
- the effectiveness of our marketing, sales and distribution strategy and operations.

We cannot be certain that clinical trials evaluating RDX7675 will establish a safety and efficacy profile sufficient to enable RDX7675 to gain approval by the FDA, or if approved, compete effectively with alternative and competing treatments. Further, it may not be possible or practicable to demonstrate, or if approved, to market on the basis of, certain of the benefits we believe RDX7675 may possess. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that RDX7675 will ever be successfully commercialized or that we will ever generate revenue from sales of RDX7675. If we are not successful in completing the development of, obtaining approval for, and commercializing RDX7675, or are significantly delayed in doing so, our business will be materially harmed.

We may not be successful in our efforts to develop our product candidates that are at an early stage of development, including RDX8940 or expand our pipeline of product candidates.

A key element of our strategy is to expand our pipeline of product candidates utilizing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform and to advance such product candidates through clinical development. In

[Table of Contents](#)

December 2016, we filed an IND to commence clinical development of RDX8940 in the United States. This product candidate, and those product candidates that are in the discovery and lead identification stages of preclinical development will require substantial preclinical and clinical development, testing and regulatory approval prior to commercialization. Of the large number of drugs in development, only a small percentage of such drugs successfully complete the FDA regulatory approval process and are commercialized. Accordingly, even if we are able to continue to fund our research programs, there can be no assurance that any product candidates will reach the clinic or be successfully developed or commercialized.

Research programs to identify product candidates require substantial technical, financial and human resources, whether or not any product candidates are ultimately identified. Although our research and development efforts to date have resulted in several development programs, we may not be able to develop product candidates that are safe, effective and well-tolerated. Our research programs may initially show promise in identifying potential product candidates, and we may select candidates for development, yet we may fail to yield product candidates for clinical development or commercialization for many reasons, including the following:

- the research methodology used and our drug discovery and design platform may not be successful in identifying potential product candidates;
- competitors may develop alternatives that render our product candidates obsolete or less attractive;
- product candidates we develop may nevertheless be covered by third parties' patents or other exclusive rights;
- the market for a product candidate may change during our program so that the continued development of that product candidate is no longer reasonable;
- a product candidate may on further study be shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate it is unlikely to be effective, well-tolerated or otherwise does not meet applicable regulatory or commercial criteria;
- a product candidate may not be capable of being produced in commercial quantities at an acceptable cost, or at all; and
- a product candidate may not be accepted as safe, effective and well-tolerated by patients, the medical community or third-party payors, if applicable.

Even if we are successful in continuing to expand our pipeline, through our own research and development efforts or by pursuing in-licensing or acquisition of product candidates, the potential product candidates for which we identify or acquire rights may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of being shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance. If we do not successfully develop and commercialize a product pipeline, we may not be able to generate revenue from product sales in future periods or ever achieve profitability.

Our proprietary drug discovery and design platform, and, in particular, APECCS, is a new approach to the discovery, design and development of new product candidates and may not result in any products of commercial value.

We have developed a proprietary drug discovery and design platform to enable the identification, screening, testing, design and development of new product candidates, and have developed APECCS as a component of this of this platform. We utilize APECCS in the design of our small molecules and to identify new and potentially novel targets in the GI tract. However, there can be no assurance that APECCS will be able to identify new targets in the GI tract or that any of these potential targets or other aspects of our proprietary drug discovery and design platform will yield product candidates that could enter clinical development and, ultimately, be commercially valuable.

[Table of Contents](#)

Although we expect to continue to enhance the capabilities of our APECCS system by advancing the cell culture and screening process and/or acquiring new technologies to broaden the scope of APECCS, we may not be successful in any of our enhancement and development efforts. In addition, we may not be able to enter into agreements on suitable terms to utilize technologies required to exploit certain capabilities of APECCS, and in such case, we may be forced to limit our use or further development of APECCS, or to modify APECCS for continued use. It may not be possible to modify APECCS in manner that avoids the utilization of certain technologies, without materially and adversely affecting the performance of APECCS or without incurring substantial cost and delay in advancement of the system. If our enhancement or development efforts are unsuccessful, or if we are forced to limit our use or further development of APECCS due to the inability to enter into agreements on suitable terms to permit the utilization of technologies required to exploit APECCS, we may not be able to advance our drug discovery capabilities as quickly as we expect or identify as many potential drugable targets as we desire.

We rely on third parties to conduct some of our nonclinical studies and all of our clinical trials. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or meet expected deadlines, we may be unable to obtain regulatory approval for or commercialize our product candidates.

We do not have the ability to independently conduct clinical trials and, in some cases, nonclinical studies. We rely on medical institutions, clinical investigators, contract laboratories, and other third parties, such as CROs, to conduct clinical trials on our product candidates. The third parties with whom we contract for execution of the clinical trials play a significant role in the conduct of these trials and the subsequent collection and analysis of data. However, these third parties are not our employees, and except for contractual duties and obligations, we control only certain aspects of their activities and have limited ability to control the amount or timing of resources that they devote to our programs. Although we rely, and will continue to rely, on these third parties to conduct some of our nonclinical studies and all of our clinical trials, we remain responsible for ensuring that each of our studies and clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards and our reliance on third parties does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. We, and these third parties are required to comply with current GLPs for nonclinical studies, and good clinical practices, or GCPs, for clinical studies. GLPs and GCPs are regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA, the Competent Authorities of the Member States of the European Economic Area, or EEA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for all of our products in nonclinical and clinical development, respectively. Regulatory authorities enforce GCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and trial sites. If we or any of our third party contractors fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, including GCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA, the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. There can be no assurance that upon inspection by a given regulatory authority, such regulatory authority will determine that any of our clinical trials comply with GCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under cGMP regulations. Our failure to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

Even if our product candidates obtain regulatory approval, they may never achieve market acceptance or commercial success, which will depend, in part, upon the degree of acceptance among physicians, patients, patient advocacy groups, health care payors and the medical community.

Even if our product candidates obtain FDA or other regulatory approvals, and are ultimately commercialized, our product candidates may not achieve market acceptance among physicians, patients, third-party payors, patient advocacy groups, and the medical community. Market acceptance of our product candidates for which marketing approval is obtained depends on a number of factors, including:

- the efficacy of the products as demonstrated in clinical trials;
- the prevalence and severity of any side effects and overall safety and tolerability profile of the product;
- the clinical indications for which the product is approved;

[Table of Contents](#)

- advantages over new or traditional or existing therapies, including recently approved therapies or therapies that the physician community anticipate will be approved;
- acceptance by physicians, major operators of clinics and patients of the product as a safe, effective and well-tolerated treatment;
- relative convenience and ease of administration of our products;
- the potential and perceived advantages of our product candidates over current treatment options or alternative treatments, including future alternative treatments;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments and willingness to pay for our products, if approved, on the part of physicians and patients;
- the availability of alternative products and their ability to meet market demand;
- the strength of our or our collaboration partners' marketing and distribution organizations;
- the quality of our relationships with patient advocacy groups; and
- sufficient third-party coverage or reimbursement.

Any failure by our product candidates that obtain regulatory approval to achieve market acceptance or commercial success would adversely affect our results of operations.

Our product candidates may cause undesirable side effects or have other properties that could delay our clinical trials, or delay or prevent regulatory approval, limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or result in significant negative consequences following regulatory approval, if any. If any of our product candidates receives marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable side effects caused by the product candidate, the ability to market the product candidates could be compromised.

Undesirable side effects caused by our product candidates could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials, result in the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or other comparable foreign regulatory authorities or limit the commercial profile of an approved label. To date, patients treated with tenapanor have experienced drug-related side effects including diarrhea, nausea, flatulence, abdominal discomfort, abdominal pain, abdominal distention and changes in electrolytes. In the event that trials conducted by us with tenapanor or trials we conduct with our other product candidates, reveal an unacceptable severity and prevalence of these or other side effects, such trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development of or deny approval of tenapanor, or any such other product candidate, for any or all targeted indications. Additionally, despite a positive efficacy profile, the prevalence and/or severity of these or other side effects could cause us to cease further development of a product candidate for a particular indication, or entirely. The drug-related side effects could affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and prospects significantly.

In addition, in the event that any of our product candidates receives regulatory approval and we or others later identify undesirable side effects caused by one of our products, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could occur, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw their approval of the product or seize the product;
- we may be required to recall the product;
- additional restrictions may be imposed on the marketing of the particular product or the manufacturing processes for the product or any component thereof, including the imposition of a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategies, or REMS, plan that may require creation of a Medication Guide outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients, as well as elements to assure safe use of the product, such as a patient registry and training and certification of prescribers;

[Table of Contents](#)

- we may be subject to fines, injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, such as a “black box” warning or a contraindication;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients;
- the product may become less competitive; and
- our reputation may suffer

Any of the foregoing events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of a particular product candidate, if approved, and could result in the loss of significant revenue to us, which would materially and adversely affect our results of operations and business.

We face substantial competition and our competitors may discover, develop or commercialize products faster or more successfully than us.

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are highly competitive, and we face significant competition from companies in the biotechnology, pharmaceutical and other related markets that are researching and marketing products designed to address diseases that we are currently developing products to treat. If approved for marketing by the FDA or other regulatory agencies, tenapanor and RDX7675, as well as our other product candidates, would compete against existing treatments.

For example, tenapanor will, if approved, compete directly with phosphate binders for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in ESRD patients on dialysis. The various types of phosphate binders commercialized in the United States include the following:

- Calcium carbonate (many over-the-counter brands including Tums and Caltrate)
- Calcium acetate (several prescription brands including PhosLo and Phoslyra)
- Lanthanum carbonate (Fosrenol marketed by Shire)
- Sevelamer hydrochloride (Renagel, marketed by Sanofi)
- Sevelamer carbonate (Renvela, marketed by Sanofi)
- Sucroferric oxyhydroxide (Velphoro, marketed by Vifor Fresenius)
- Ferric citrate (Auryxia, marketed by Keryx)

The hydrochloride form of sevelamer, Renagel, was launched in the United States by Genzyme Corporation in 1998 prior to its acquisition by Sanofi, and the carbonate form, Renvela, was launched in 2008. Sanofi booked €935 million (\$1.04 billion) in worldwide sales of sevelamer during 2015 and €687 million through September 30, 2016. Generic sevelamer was expected to enter the U.S. market in early 2014 after expiration of Sanofi’s patent, but as of 2017, no generic sevelamer has yet been approved in the United States. Generic sevelamer was approved, however, in certain jurisdictions in Europe in 2015. In addition to the currently marketed phosphate binders, we are aware of at least two other binders in development, including fermagate (Alpharen), an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Opko Health, Inc., and PT20, an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Shield Therapeutics.

Numerous treatments exist for constipation and the constipation component of IBS-C, many of which are over-the-counter. These include psyllium husk (such as Metamucil), methylcellulose (such as Citrucel), calcium polycarbophil (such as FiberCon), lactulose (such as Cephulac), polyethylene glycol (such as MiraLax), sennosides (such as Exlax), bisacodyl (such as Ducolax), docusate sodium (such as Colace), magnesium hydroxide (such as Milk of Magnesia), saline enemas (such as Fleet) and sorbitol. These agents are generally inexpensive and work well to temporarily relieve constipation.

[Table of Contents](#)

We are also aware of two prescription products marketed for IBS-C, Linzess (linaclotide) marketed by Ironwood Pharmaceuticals and Allergan and Amitiza (lubiprostone) marketed by Sucampo and Takeda. In two Phase 3 clinical trials of Linzess in IBS-C patients, the placebo-adjusted rate of IBS-C patients reaching the primary endpoint, overall responder rate, indicating a significant response during 6 out of 12 weeks of treatment, was 12.6% and 19.8%, respectively. In these studies, Linzess caused diarrhea in up to 17% more patients than placebo. Trulance (plecanatide) was approved by FDA in January 2017 for use in adults for treatment of chronic idiopathic constipation, and Synergy Pharmaceuticals, the drug's manufacturer, presented Phase 3 data from two clinical studies of Trulance in IBS-C patients in December 2016. In one study, the placebo-adjusted rate of IBS-C patients reaching the primary endpoint, overall responder rate, indicating a significant response during 6 out of 12 weeks of treatment, was 7.3% and 9.8% of patients receiving 3mg and 6mg, respectively. In the other study, the placebo-adjusted rate of IBS-C patients reaching the same primary endpoint was 12.4% and 11.7% of patients receiving 3mg and 6mg, respectively. Synergy has stated their intent to submit an NDA for plecanatide in IBS-C in the first quarter 2017.

Finally, we are aware of at least two drugs approaching or on the market for the treatment of hyperkalemia. Veltassa (patiromer FOS), an oral, polymer-based potassium binder, was approved for marketing by the FDA in October 2015 and was commercially launched by Relypsa, a company that was acquired by Galenica for \$1.5 billion in September 2016. Additionally, ZS Pharma submitted an NDA in June 2015 for ZS-9, a sodium zirconium cyclosilicate-based oral potassium binder. ZS-9 will be commercially launched by AstraZeneca, a company that acquired ZS Pharma in December 2015 for \$2.7 billion.

It is possible that our competitors will develop and market drugs or other treatments that are less expensive and more effective than our product candidates, or that will render our product candidates obsolete. It is also possible that our competitors will commercialize competing drugs or treatments before we, or our collaboration partners, can launch any products developed from our product candidates. We also anticipate that we will face increased competition in the future as new companies enter into our target markets.

Many of our competitors have materially greater name recognition and financial, manufacturing, marketing, research and drug development resources than we do. Additional mergers and acquisitions in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries may result in even more resources being concentrated in our competitors. Large pharmaceutical companies in particular have extensive expertise in preclinical and clinical testing and in obtaining regulatory approvals for drugs. In addition, academic institutions, government agencies, and other public and private organizations conducting research may seek patent protection with respect to potentially competitive products or technologies. These organizations may also establish exclusive collaboration partnerships or licensing relationships with our competitors.

We currently have no sales organization. If we are unable to establish sales capabilities on our own or through third parties, we may not be able to commercialize tenapanor or any of our other product candidates.

We currently do not have a sales organization. In order to commercialize or co-promote tenapanor, RDX7675 or any of our other product candidates, either alone, or with a collaboration partner, we must build our marketing, sales, distribution, managerial and other non-technical capabilities or make arrangements with third parties to perform these services, and we may not be successful in doing so. In order to commercialize tenapanor or RDX7675 outside of the United States, we may enter into collaborative relationships with one or more third parties. There can be no assurances that we will be successful in establishing such relationships in a timely manner or on terms that are acceptable to us. If one or more of our product candidates receives regulatory approval, we currently expect to establish appropriate sales organizations with technical expertise supporting distribution capabilities to commercialize our product candidates, which will be expensive and time consuming. As a company, we have no prior experience in the marketing, sale and distribution of pharmaceutical products and there are significant risks involved in building and managing a sales organization, including our ability to hire, retain, and incentivize qualified individuals, generate sufficient sales leads, provide adequate training to sales and marketing personnel, comply with regulatory requirements applicable to the marketing and sale of drug products and effectively manage a geographically dispersed sales and marketing team. Any

[Table of Contents](#)

failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities would adversely impact the commercialization of these products.

We may choose to collaborate with third parties that have direct sales forces and established distribution systems, either to augment our own sales force and distribution systems or in lieu of our own sales force and distribution systems. If we are unable to enter into such arrangements on acceptable terms or at all, we may not be able to successfully commercialize our product candidates.

We rely completely on third parties to manufacture our nonclinical and clinical drug supplies, and we intend to rely on third parties to produce commercial supplies of any approved product candidate. Our business would be harmed if those third parties fail to obtain approval of the FDA, Competent Authorities of the Member States of the EEA or comparable regulatory authorities, fail to provide us with sufficient quantities of drug product, or fail to do so at acceptable quality levels or prices.

We do not currently have, nor do we plan to acquire, the infrastructure or capability internally to manufacture our drug supplies for use in the conduct of our nonclinical and clinical studies, and we lack the resources and the capability to manufacture any of our product candidates on a clinical or commercial scale. The facilities used by our contract manufacturers to manufacture any drug products must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after an NDA is submitted to the FDA. We do not control the manufacturing process of our product candidates, and we are completely dependent on our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with the regulatory requirements, known as cGMPs, for manufacture of both active drug substances and finished drug products.

If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA or others, they will not be able to secure and/or maintain regulatory approval for their manufacturing facilities. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our product candidates or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our product candidates, if approved.

We rely on our manufacturers to purchase from third-party suppliers the materials necessary to produce our product candidates for our clinical studies. There are a limited number of suppliers for raw materials that we use to manufacture our drugs, and there may be a need to identify alternate suppliers to prevent a possible disruption of the manufacture of the materials necessary to produce our product candidates for our clinical studies, and, if approved, ultimately for commercial sale. We do not have any control over the process or timing of the acquisition of these raw materials by our manufacturers. Although we generally do not begin a clinical study unless we believe we have on hand, or will be able to manufacture, a sufficient supply of a product candidate to complete such study, any significant delay or discontinuity in the supply of a product candidate, or the raw material components thereof, for an ongoing clinical study due to the need to replace a third-party manufacturer could considerably delay completion of our clinical studies, product testing, and potential regulatory approval of our product candidates, which could harm our business and results of operations.

Third-party payor coverage and reimbursement status of newly-approved products is uncertain. Failure to obtain or maintain adequate coverage and reimbursement for our products, if approved, could limit our ability to market those products and decrease our ability to generate revenue.

The pricing, coverage and reimbursement of our product candidates, if approved, must be adequate to support a commercial infrastructure. The availability and adequacy of coverage and reimbursement by governmental and private payors are essential for most patients to be able to afford treatments such as ours, assuming approval. Sales of our product candidates will depend substantially, both domestically and abroad, on the extent to which the costs of our product candidates will be paid for by health maintenance, managed care,

[Table of Contents](#)

pharmacy benefit, and similar healthcare management organizations, or reimbursed by government authorities, private health insurers, and other third-party payors. If coverage and reimbursement are not available, or are available only to limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize our product candidates. Even if coverage is provided, the approved reimbursement amount may not be high enough to allow us to establish or maintain pricing sufficient to realize a return on our investment.

There is significant uncertainty related to the insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly approved products. In the United States, the principal decisions about coverage and reimbursement for new drugs are typically made by the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, an agency within the U.S.

Department of Health and Human Services responsible for administering the Medicare program, as CMS decides whether and to what extent a new drug will be covered and reimbursed under Medicare. Private payors tend to follow the coverage reimbursement policies established by CMS to a substantial degree. It is difficult to predict what CMS will decide with respect to reimbursement for products such as ours.

In July 2010, CMS released its final rule to implement a bundled prospective payment system for the treatment of ESRD patients as required by the Medicare Improvements for Patients and Providers Act, or MIPPA. The bundled payment covers a bundle of items and services routinely required for dialysis treatments furnished to Medicare beneficiaries in Medicare-certified ESRD facilities or at their home, including the cost of certain routine drugs. The final rule delayed the inclusion of oral medications without intravenous equivalents in the bundled payment until January 1, 2014 and in April 2014, President Obama signed the Protecting Access to Medicare Act of 2014, which further extended this implementation date to January 1, 2024. Additionally, section 204 of the Stephen Beck, Jr., Achieving a Better Life Experience Act of 2014, or ABLE, provides that payment for oral-only ESRD drugs cannot be made under the ESRD Prospective Payment System prior to January 1, 2025. As a result of the recent legislation, beginning in 2025, ESRD-related drugs may be included in the bundle and separate Medicare reimbursement will no longer be available for such drugs, as it is today under Medicare Part D. While it is too early to project the full impact bundling may have on the industry, the impact could potentially cause dramatic price reductions for tenapanor and RDX7675, if approved. We may be unable to sell tenapanor and/or RDX7675, if approved, to dialysis providers on a profitable basis if third-party payors reduce their current levels of payment, or if our costs of production increase faster than increases in reimbursement levels.

Outside the United States, international operations are generally subject to extensive governmental price controls and other market regulations, and we believe the increasing emphasis on cost-containment initiatives in Europe, Canada, Japan, China and other countries has and will continue to put pressure on the pricing and usage of our product candidates. In many countries, the prices of medical products are subject to varying price control mechanisms as part of national health systems. Other countries allow companies to fix their own prices for medicinal products, but monitor and control company profits. Additional foreign price controls or other changes in pricing regulation could restrict the amount that we are able to charge for our product candidates. Accordingly, in markets outside the United States, the reimbursement for our products may be reduced compared with the United States and may be insufficient to generate commercially reasonable revenue and profits.

Moreover, increasing efforts by governmental and third-party payors in the United States and abroad to cap or reduce healthcare costs may cause such organizations to limit both coverage and the level of reimbursement for new products approved and, as a result, these caps may not cover or provide adequate payment for our product candidates. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of any of our product candidates due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations, and additional legislative changes. The downward pressure on healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription drugs and surgical procedures and other treatments, has become very intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products.

[Table of Contents](#)

If product liability lawsuits are brought against us, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit commercialization of our product candidates.

We face an inherent risk of product liability as a result of the clinical testing of our product candidates and will face an even greater risk if we commercialize any products. For example, we may be sued if any product we develop allegedly causes injury or is found to be otherwise unsuitable during product testing, manufacturing, marketing or sale. Any such product liability claims may include allegations of defects in manufacturing, defects in design, a failure to warn of dangers inherent in the product, negligence, strict liability, and a breach of warranties. Claims could also be asserted under state consumer protection acts. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against product liability claims, we may incur substantial liabilities or be required to limit commercialization of our product candidates. Even successful defense would require significant financial and management resources. Regardless of the merits or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for our product candidates;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- costs to defend the related litigation;
- a diversion of management's time and our resources;
- substantial monetary awards to trial participants or patients;
- regulatory investigations, product recalls or withdrawals, or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- loss of revenue; and
- the inability to commercialize or co-promote our product candidates.

Our inability to obtain and maintain sufficient product liability insurance at an acceptable cost and scope of coverage to protect against potential product liability claims could prevent or inhibit the commercialization of any products we develop. We currently carry product liability insurance covering use in our clinical trials in the amount of \$10.0 million in the aggregate. Although we maintain such insurance, any claim that may be brought against us could result in a court judgment or settlement in an amount that is not covered, in whole or in part, by our insurance or that is in excess of the limits of our insurance coverage. Our insurance policies also have various exclusions and deductibles, and we may be subject to a product liability claim for which we have no coverage. We will have to pay any amounts awarded by a court or negotiated in a settlement that exceed our coverage limitations or that are not covered by our insurance, and we may not have, or be able to obtain, sufficient capital to pay such amounts. Moreover, in the future, we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses.

We are highly dependent on the services of our President and Chief Executive Officer, Michael Raab, our Executive Vice President and Chief Operating Officer, Reginald Seeto, MBBS, our Chief Scientific Officer, Jeremy Caldwell, Ph.D., and our Chief Development Officer, David Rosenbaum, Ph.D. If we are not able to retain these members of our management team, or recruit additional management, clinical and scientific personnel, our business will suffer.

Our success depends in part on our continued ability to attract, retain and motivate highly qualified personnel. In particular, we are highly dependent upon Michael Raab, our President and Chief Executive Officer, Reginald Seeto, MBBS, Jeremy Caldwell, Ph.D., our Chief Scientific Officer and David Rosenbaum, Ph.D., our Chief Development Officer. The loss of services of any of these individuals could delay or impair the successful development of our product pipeline, completion of our planned clinical trials or the commercialization of our product candidates. Although we have entered into employment agreements with our senior management team, including Mr. Raab and Drs. Seeto, Caldwell and Rosenbaum, these agreements are terminable at will with or without notice and, therefore, we may not be able to retain their services as expected. Although we have not historically experienced unique difficulties

[Table of Contents](#)

attracting and retaining qualified employees, we could experience such problems in the future. For example, competition for qualified personnel in the biotechnology and pharmaceuticals field is intense due to the limited number of individuals who possess the skills and experience required by our industry. In addition to the competition for personnel, the San Francisco Bay area in particular is characterized by a high cost of living. As such, we could have difficulty attracting experienced personnel to our company and may be required to expend significant financial resources in our employee recruitment and retention efforts.

We will need to continue to increase the size of our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing growth.

We will need to continue to expand our clinical, managerial, operational, finance and other resources in order to manage our operations, preclinical and clinical trials, research and development activities, regulatory filings, manufacturing and supply activities, and any marketing and commercialization activities. Our management, personnel, systems and facilities currently in place may not be adequate to support this future growth. Our need to effectively execute our growth strategy requires that we:

- expand our general and administrative functions;
- establish and build a marketing and commercial organization;
- identify, recruit, retain, incentivize and integrate additional employees;
- manage our internal development efforts effectively while carrying out our contractual obligations to third parties; and
- continue to improve our operational, legal, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures.

If we are not able to attract, retain and motivate necessary personnel to accomplish our business objectives, we may experience constraints that will significantly impede the achievement of our development objectives, our ability to raise additional capital and our ability to implement our business strategy.

Significant disruptions of information technology systems or breaches of data security could adversely affect our business.

Our business is increasingly dependent on critical, complex and interdependent information technology systems to support business processes as well as internal and external communications. The size and complexity of our computer systems make them vulnerable to breakdown, malicious intrusion and computer viruses. We have developed systems and processes that are designed to protect our information and prevent data loss and other security breaches, including systems and processes designed to reduce the impact of a security breach; however, such measures cannot provide absolute security, and we have taken, and will take, additional security measures to protect against any future intrusion. Any failure to protect against breakdowns, malicious intrusions and computer viruses may result in the impairment of production and key business processes. In addition, our systems are potentially vulnerable to data security breaches, whether by employees or others, which may expose sensitive data to unauthorized persons. Such data security breaches could lead to the loss of trade secrets or other intellectual property, or could lead to the public exposure of personal information of our employees, clinical trial patients, customers, and others. Such disruptions and breaches of security could expose us to liability and have a material adverse effect on the operating results and financial condition of our business.

We incur significant costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management will devote substantial time to new compliance initiatives. We may fail to comply with the rules that apply to public companies, including Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, which could result in sanctions or other penalties that would harm our business.

We incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses as a public company, including costs resulting from public company reporting obligations under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the

[Table of Contents](#)

Exchange Act, and regulations regarding corporate governance practices. The listing requirements of The NASDAQ Global Market require that we satisfy certain corporate governance requirements relating to director independence, distributing annual and interim reports, stockholder meetings, approvals and voting, soliciting proxies, conflicts of interest and a code of conduct. Our management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to ensure that we comply with all of these requirements. Moreover, the reporting requirements, rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time consuming and costly. Any changes we make to comply with these obligations may not be sufficient to allow us to satisfy our obligations as a public company on a timely basis, or at all. These reporting requirements, rules and regulations, coupled with the increase in potential litigation exposure associated with being a public company, could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified persons to serve on our board of directors or board committees or to serve as executive officers, or to obtain certain types of insurance, including directors' and officers' insurance, on acceptable terms.

In addition, we are in the process of implementing an enterprise resource planning, or ERP, system for our company. An ERP system is intended to combine and streamline the management of our financial, accounting, human resources, sales and marketing and other functions, enabling us to manage operations and track performance more effectively. However, an ERP system will require us to complete many processes and procedures for the effective use of the system or to run our business using the system, which may result in substantial costs. Additionally, during the conversion process, we may be limited in our ability to convert any business that we acquire to the ERP. Any disruptions or difficulties in implementing or using an ERP system could adversely affect our controls and harm our business, including our ability to forecast or make sales and collect our receivables. Moreover, such disruption or difficulties could result in unanticipated costs and diversion of management attention.

We are subject to Section 404 of The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or Section 404, and the related rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, which generally require our management and independent registered public accounting firm to report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Section 404 requires an annual management assessment of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. However, for so long as we remain an emerging growth company as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or JOBS Act, we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to public companies that are emerging growth companies, including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404. Once we are no longer an emerging growth company or, if prior to such date, we opt to no longer take advantage of the applicable exemption, we will be required to include an opinion from our independent registered public accounting firm on the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earlier of (1) the last day of the fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the completion of our IPO (December 31, 2019), (2) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenue of at least \$1.0 billion, or (3) the last day of the fiscal year in which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer, which means the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the prior June 30th, and (4) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt during the prior three-year period.

During the course of our review and testing of our internal controls, we may identify deficiencies and be unable to remediate them before we must provide the required reports. Furthermore, if we have a material weakness in our internal controls over financial reporting, we may not detect errors on a timely basis and our financial statements may be materially misstated. We or our independent registered public accounting firm may not be able to conclude on an ongoing basis that we have effective internal control over financial reporting, which could harm our operating results, cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information and cause the trading price of our stock to fall. In addition, as a public company we are required to file accurate and timely quarterly and annual reports with the SEC under the Exchange Act. Any failure to report our financial results on an accurate and timely basis could result in sanctions, lawsuits, delisting of our shares from The NASDAQ Global Market or other adverse consequences that would materially harm our business.

[Table of Contents](#)

We may form collaboration partnerships in the future, and we may not realize the benefits of such collaborations.

We may form collaboration partnerships, create joint ventures or enter into licensing arrangements with third parties that we believe will complement or augment our existing business. In particular, we expect to form one or more collaboration partnerships in connection with the commercialization of tenapanor outside of the United States, if approved. We face significant competition in seeking appropriate collaboration partners, and the negotiation process to secure appropriate terms is time-consuming and complex. Any delays in identifying suitable collaboration partners and entering into agreements to develop our product candidates could also delay the commercialization of our product candidates, which may reduce their competitiveness even if they reach the market. Moreover, we may not be successful in our efforts to establish such a collaboration partnership for any future product candidates and programs on terms that are acceptable to us, or at all. This may be because our product candidates and programs may be deemed to be at too early of a stage of development for collaborative effort, our research and development pipeline may be viewed as insufficient, and/or third parties may not view our product candidates and programs as having sufficient potential for commercialization, including the likelihood of an adequate safety and efficacy profile. Even if we are successful in entering into a collaboration partnership or license arrangement, there is no guarantee that the collaboration partnership will be successful, or that any future collaboration partner will commit sufficient resources to the development, regulatory approval, and commercialization effort for such products, or that such alliances will result in us achieving revenues that justify such transactions.

We may engage in strategic transactions that could impact our liquidity, increase our expenses and present significant distractions to our management.

We intend to consider strategic transactions, such as acquisitions of companies, asset purchases, and or in-licensing of products, product candidates or technologies. Additional potential transactions that we may consider include a variety of different business arrangements, including spin-offs, collaboration partnerships, joint ventures, restructurings, divestitures, business combinations and investments. Any such transaction may require us to incur non-recurring or other charges, may increase our near- and long-term expenditures and may pose significant integration challenges or disrupt our management or business, which could adversely affect our operations and financial results. For example, these transactions may entail numerous operational and financial risks, including:

- up-front, milestone and royalty payments, equity investments and financial support of new research and development candidates including increase of personnel, all of which may be substantial;
- exposure to unknown liabilities;
- disruption of our business and diversion of our management's time and attention in order to develop acquired products, product candidates or technologies;
- incurrence of substantial debt or dilutive issuances of equity securities to pay for acquisitions;
- higher-than-expected acquisition and integration costs;
- write-downs of assets or goodwill or impairment charges;
- increased amortization expenses;
- difficulty and cost in combining the operations and personnel of any acquired businesses with our operations and personnel;
- impairment of relationships with key suppliers or customers of any acquired businesses due to changes in management and ownership; and
- inability to retain key employees of any acquired businesses.

Accordingly, although there can be no assurance that we will undertake or successfully complete any transactions of the nature described above, any transactions that we do complete may be subject to the foregoing

[Table of Contents](#)

or other risks and could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects.

If we seek and obtain approval to commercialize our product candidates outside of the United States, or otherwise engage in business outside of the United States, a variety of risks associated with international operations could materially adversely affect our business.

We may decide to seek marketing approval for certain of our product candidates outside the United States or otherwise engage in business outside the United States, including entering into contractual agreements with third-parties. We expect that we will be subject to additional risks related to entering into these international business markets and relationships, including:

- different regulatory requirements for drug approvals in foreign countries;
- differing United States and foreign drug import and export rules;
- reduced protection for intellectual property rights in foreign countries;
- unexpected changes in tariffs, trade barriers and regulatory requirements;
- different reimbursement systems, and different competitive drugs;
- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular foreign economies and markets;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- foreign taxes, including withholding of payroll taxes;
- foreign currency fluctuations, which could result in increased operating expenses and reduced revenues, and other obligations incident to doing business in another country;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;
- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad;
- potential liability resulting from development work conducted by these distributors; and
- business interruptions resulting from geopolitical actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters.

Our business involves the use of hazardous materials and we and third-parties with whom we contract must comply with environmental laws and regulations, which can be expensive and restrict how we do business.

Our research and development activities involve the controlled storage, use and disposal of hazardous materials, including the components of our product candidates and other hazardous compounds. We and manufacturers and suppliers with whom we may contract are subject to laws and regulations governing the use, manufacture, storage, handling and disposal of these hazardous materials. In some cases, these hazardous materials and various wastes resulting from their use are stored at our and our manufacturers' facilities pending their use and disposal. We cannot eliminate the risk of contamination, which could cause an interruption of our commercialization efforts, research and development efforts and business operations, environmental damage resulting in costly clean-up and liabilities under applicable laws and regulations governing the use, storage, handling and disposal of these materials and specified waste products. We cannot guarantee that the safety procedures utilized by third-party manufacturers and suppliers with whom we may contract will comply with the standards prescribed by laws and regulations or will eliminate the risk of accidental contamination or injury from these materials. In such an event, we may be held liable for any resulting damages and such liability could exceed our resources and state or federal or other applicable authorities may curtail our use of certain materials and/or interrupt our business operations. Furthermore, environmental laws and regulations are complex, change

[Table of Contents](#)

frequently and have tended to become more stringent. We cannot predict the impact of such changes and cannot be certain of our future compliance. We do not currently carry biological or hazardous waste insurance coverage.

Our internal computer systems, or those of our CROs or other contractors or consultants, may fail or suffer security breaches, which could result in a material disruption of our product development programs.

Despite the implementation of security measures, our internal computer systems and those of our CROs and other contractors and consultants are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, unauthorized access, natural disasters, terrorism, war and telecommunication and electrical failures. While we have not experienced any such system failure, accident or security breach to date, if such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our programs. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or ongoing clinical trials for any of our product candidates could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. To the extent that any disruption or security breach results in a loss of or damage to our data or applications, or inappropriate disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur liability and the further development of our product candidates could be delayed.

We may be adversely affected by the current global economic environment.

Our ability to attract and retain collaboration partners or customers, invest in and grow our business and meet our financial obligations depends on our operating and financial performance, which, in turn, is subject to numerous factors, including the prevailing economic conditions and financial, business and other factors beyond our control, such as the rate of unemployment, the number of uninsured persons in the United States, presidential elections, other political influences and inflationary pressures. Our results of operations could be adversely affected by general conditions in the global economy and in the global financial markets. The recent global financial crisis caused extreme volatility and disruptions in the capital and credit markets. We cannot anticipate all the ways in which the current global economic climate and global financial market conditions could adversely impact our business.

We are exposed to risks associated with reduced profitability and the potential financial instability of our collaboration partners or customers, many of which may be adversely affected by volatile conditions in the financial markets. For example, unemployment and underemployment, and the resultant loss of insurance, may decrease the demand for healthcare services and pharmaceuticals. If fewer patients are seeking medical care because they do not have insurance coverage, our collaboration partners or customers may experience reductions in revenues, profitability and/or cash flow that could lead them to reduce their support of our programs or financing activities. If collaboration partners or customers are not successful in generating sufficient revenue or are precluded from securing financing, they may not be able to pay, or may delay payment of, accounts receivable that are owed to us. In addition, the volatility in the financial markets could cause significant fluctuations in the interest rate and currency markets. We currently do not hedge for these risks. The foregoing events, in turn, could adversely affect our financial condition and liquidity. In addition, if economic challenges in the United States result in widespread and prolonged unemployment, either regionally or on a national basis, prior to the effectiveness or after the repeal of certain provisions of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act, collectively known as the Affordable Care Act, a substantial number of people may become uninsured or underinsured. To the extent economic challenges result in fewer individuals pursuing or being able to afford our product candidates once commercialized, our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows could be adversely affected.

We may be adversely affected by earthquakes or other natural disasters and our business continuity and disaster recovery plans may not adequately protect us from a serious disaster.

Our corporate headquarters and other facilities are located in the San Francisco Bay Area, which in the past has experienced severe earthquakes. We do not carry earthquake insurance. Earthquakes or other natural disasters

[Table of Contents](#)

could severely disrupt our operations, and have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects.

If a natural disaster, power outage or other event occurred that prevented us from using all or a significant portion of our headquarters, that damaged critical infrastructure, such as our enterprise financial systems or manufacturing resource planning and enterprise quality systems, or that otherwise disrupted operations, it may be difficult or, in certain cases, impossible for us to continue our business for a substantial period of time. The disaster recovery and business continuity plans we have in place currently are limited and are unlikely to prove adequate in the event of a serious disaster or similar event. We may incur substantial expenses as a result of the limited nature of our disaster recovery and business continuity plans, which, particularly when taken together with our lack of earthquake insurance, could have a material adverse effect on our business.

Risks Related to Government Regulation

The regulatory approval processes of the FDA and comparable foreign authorities are lengthy, time consuming and inherently unpredictable. If we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, our business will be substantially harmed.

The research, testing, manufacturing, labeling, approval, selling, import, export, marketing and distribution of drug products are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA and other regulatory authorities in the United States and other countries, which regulations differ from country to country. Neither we nor any of our collaboration partners is permitted to market any drug product in the United States until we receive marketing approval from the FDA. We have not submitted an application or obtained marketing approval for any of our product candidates anywhere in the world. Obtaining regulatory approval of a NDA can be a lengthy, expensive and uncertain process. In addition, failure to comply with FDA and other applicable United States and foreign regulatory requirements may subject us to administrative or judicially imposed sanctions or other actions, including:

- warning letters;
- civil and criminal penalties;
- injunctions;
- withdrawal of regulatory approval of products;
- product seizure or detention;
- product recalls;
- total or partial suspension of production; and
- refusal to approve pending NDAs or supplements to approved NDAs.

Prior to obtaining approval to commercialize a drug candidate in the United States or abroad, we or our collaboration partners must demonstrate with substantial evidence from well-controlled clinical trials, and to the satisfaction of the FDA or other foreign regulatory agencies, that such drug candidates are safe and effective for their intended uses. The number of nonclinical studies and clinical trials that will be required for FDA approval varies depending on the drug candidate, the disease or condition that the drug candidate is designed to address, and the regulations applicable to any particular drug candidate. Results from nonclinical studies and clinical trials can be interpreted in different ways. Even if we believe the nonclinical or clinical data for our drug candidates are promising, such data may not be sufficient to support approval by the FDA and other regulatory authorities. Administering drug candidates to humans may produce undesirable side effects, which could interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and result in the FDA or other regulatory authorities denying approval of a drug candidate for any or all targeted indications.

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA and comparable foreign authorities is unpredictable, typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical studies, and depends upon numerous factors.

[Table of Contents](#)

The FDA and comparable foreign authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process and we may encounter matters with the FDA or such comparable authorities that requires us to expend additional time and resources and delay or prevent the approval of our product candidates. For example, the FDA may require us to conduct additional studies or trials for drug product either prior to or post-approval, such as additional drug-drug interaction studies or safety or efficacy studies or trials, or it may object to elements of our clinical development program such as the number of subjects in our current clinical trials from the United States. In addition, approval policies, regulations or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions, which may cause delays in the approval or result in a decision not to approve an application for regulatory approval. Despite the time and expense exerted, failure can occur at any stage.

Applications for our product candidates could fail to receive regulatory approval for many reasons, including but not limited to the following:

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design or implementation of our, or our collaboration partners', clinical studies;
- the population studied in the clinical program may not be sufficiently broad or representative to assure safety in the full population for which approval is sought;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the interpretation of data from preclinical studies or clinical studies;
- the data collected from clinical studies of our product candidates may not be sufficient to support the submission of a NDA or other submission or to obtain regulatory approval in the United States or elsewhere;
- we or our collaboration partners may be unable to demonstrate to the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that a product candidate's risk-benefit ratio for its proposed indication is acceptable;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may fail to approve the manufacturing processes, test procedures and specifications, or facilities of third-party manufacturers responsible for clinical and commercial supplies; and
- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

This lengthy approval process, as well as the unpredictability of the results of clinical studies, may result in our failure and/or that of our collaboration partners to obtain regulatory approval to market any of our product candidates, which would significantly harm our business, results of operations, and prospects. Additionally, if the FDA requires that we conduct additional clinical studies, places limitations in our label, delays approval to market our product candidates or limits the use of our products, our business and results of operations may be harmed.

In addition, even if we were to obtain approval, regulatory authorities may approve any of our product candidates for fewer or more limited indications than we request, may not approve the price we intend to charge for our products, may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials, or may approve a product candidate with a label that does not include the labeling claims necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of that product candidate. Any of the foregoing scenarios could materially harm the commercial prospects for our product candidates.

Even if we receive regulatory approval for a product candidate, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense. Additionally, any product candidates, if approved, could be subject to labeling and other restrictions and market

[Table of Contents](#)

withdrawal, and we may be subject to penalties if we fail to comply with regulatory requirements or experience unanticipated problems with our products.

Even if a drug is approved by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities, the manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion and recordkeeping for the product will be subject to extensive and ongoing regulatory requirements. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, registration, as well as continued compliance with cGMPs and GCP regulations for any clinical trials that we conduct post-approval. As such, we and our third party contract manufacturers will be subject to continual review and periodic inspections to assess compliance with regulatory requirements. Accordingly, we and others with whom we work must continue to expend time, money, and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production, and quality control. Regulatory authorities may also impose significant restrictions on a product's indicated uses or marketing or impose ongoing requirements for potentially costly post-marketing studies. Furthermore, any new legislation addressing drug safety issues could result in delays or increased costs to assure compliance.

We will also be required to report certain adverse reactions and production problems, if any, to the FDA, and to comply with requirements concerning advertising and promotion for our products. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved label. As such, we may not promote our products for indications or uses for which they do not have FDA approval.

Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with our third-party manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in, among other things:

- warning letters, fines or holds on clinical trials;
- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product, withdrawal of the product from the market or voluntary or mandatory product recalls;
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties;
- suspension or revocation of existing regulatory approvals;
- suspension of any of our ongoing clinical trials;
- refusal to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications submitted by us;
- restrictions on our or our contract manufacturers' operations; or
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products.

Any government investigation of alleged violations of law could require us to expend significant time and resources in response, and could generate negative publicity. Any failure to comply with ongoing regulatory requirements may significantly and adversely affect our ability to commercialize our product candidates. If regulatory sanctions are applied or if regulatory approval is withdrawn, the value of our company and our operating results will be adversely affected.

In addition, the FDA's policies may change and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of our product candidates. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained, which would adversely affect our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

We and our contract manufacturers are subject to significant regulation with respect to manufacturing our product candidates. The manufacturing facilities on which we rely may not continue to meet regulatory requirements or may not be able to meet supply demands.

All entities involved in the preparation of product candidates for clinical studies or commercial sale, including our existing contract manufacturers for our product candidates are subject to extensive regulation.

[Table of Contents](#)

Components of a finished therapeutic product approved for commercial sale or used in late-stage clinical studies must be manufactured in accordance with cGMP regulations. These regulations govern manufacturing processes and procedures (including record keeping) and the implementation and operation of quality systems to control and assure the quality of investigational products and products approved for sale. Poor control of production processes can lead to the introduction of contaminants or to inadvertent changes in the properties or stability of our product candidates that may not be detectable in final product testing. We or our contract manufacturers must supply all necessary documentation in support of an NDA or comparable regulatory filing on a timely basis and must adhere to cGMP regulations enforced by the FDA and other regulatory agencies through their facilities inspection programs. The facilities and quality systems of some or all of our third-party contractors must pass a pre-approval inspection for compliance with the applicable regulations as a condition of regulatory approval of our product candidates. In addition, the regulatory authorities may, at any time, audit or inspect a manufacturing facility involved with the preparation of our product candidates or our other potential products or the associated quality systems for compliance with the regulations applicable to the activities being conducted. Although we oversee the contract manufacturers, we cannot control the manufacturing process of, and are completely dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with the regulatory requirements. If these facilities do not pass a pre-approval plant inspection, regulatory approval of the products may not be granted or may be substantially delayed until any violations are corrected to the satisfaction of the regulatory authority, if ever. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel.

The regulatory authorities also may, at any time following approval of a product for sale, audit the manufacturing facilities of our third-party contractors. If any such inspection or audit identifies a failure to comply with applicable regulations or if a violation of our product specifications or applicable regulations occurs independent of such an inspection or audit, we or the relevant regulatory authority may require remedial measures that may be costly and/or time consuming for us or a third party to implement, and that may include the temporary or permanent suspension of a clinical study or commercial sales or the temporary or permanent suspension of production or closure of a facility. Any such remedial measures imposed upon us or third parties with whom we contract could materially harm our business.

If we or any of our third-party manufacturers fail to maintain regulatory compliance, the FDA or other applicable regulatory authority can impose regulatory sanctions including, among other things, refusal to approve a pending application for a new drug product, withdrawal of an approval, or suspension of production. As a result, our business, financial condition, and results of operations may be materially harmed.

Additionally, if supply from one approved manufacturer is interrupted, an alternative manufacturer would need to be qualified through an NDA, a supplemental NDA or equivalent foreign regulatory filing, which could result in further delay. The regulatory agencies may also require additional studies if a new manufacturer is relied upon for commercial production. Switching manufacturers may involve substantial costs and is likely to result in a delay in our desired clinical and commercial timelines.

These factors could cause us to incur higher costs and could cause the delay or termination of clinical studies, regulatory submissions, required approvals, or commercialization of our product candidates. Furthermore, if our suppliers fail to meet contractual requirements and we are unable to secure one or more replacement suppliers capable of production at a substantially equivalent cost, our clinical studies may be delayed or we could lose potential revenue.

If we fail to comply or are found to have failed to comply with FDA and other regulations related to the promotion of our products for unapproved uses, we could be subject to criminal penalties, substantial fines or other sanctions and damage awards.

The regulations relating to the promotion of products for unapproved uses are complex and subject to substantial interpretation by the FDA and other government agencies. If tenapanor, RDX7675 or our other product candidates receive marketing approval, we and our collaborating partners, if any, will be restricted from

[Table of Contents](#)

marketing the product outside of its approved labeling, also referred to as off-label promotion. However, physicians may nevertheless prescribe an approved product to their patients in a manner that is inconsistent with the approved label, which is an off-label use. We intend to implement compliance and training programs designed to ensure that our sales and marketing practices comply with applicable regulations regarding off-label promotion. Notwithstanding these programs, the FDA or other government agencies may allege or find that our practices constitute prohibited promotion of our product candidates for unapproved uses. We also cannot be sure that our employees will comply with company policies and applicable regulations regarding the promotion of products for unapproved uses.

Over the past several years, a significant number of pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies have been the target of inquiries and investigations by various federal and state regulatory, investigative, prosecutorial and administrative entities in connection with the promotion of products for unapproved uses and other sales practices, including the Department of Justice and various U.S. Attorneys' Offices, the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services, the FDA, the Federal Trade Commission and various state Attorneys General offices. These investigations have alleged violations of various federal and state laws and regulations, including claims asserting antitrust violations, violations of the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, the False Claims Act, the Prescription Drug Marketing Act, anti-kickback laws, and other alleged violations in connection with the promotion of products for unapproved uses, pricing and Medicare and/or Medicaid reimbursement. Many of these investigations originate as "qui tam" actions under the False Claims Act. Under the False Claims Act, any individual can bring a claim on behalf of the government alleging that a person or entity has presented a false claim, or caused a false claim to be submitted, to the government for payment. The person bringing a qui tam suit is entitled to a share of any recovery or settlement. Qui tam suits, also commonly referred to as "whistleblower suits," are often brought by current or former employees. In a qui tam suit, the government must decide whether to intervene and prosecute the case. If it declines, the individual may pursue the case alone.

If the FDA or any other governmental agency initiates an enforcement action against us or if we are the subject of a qui tam suit and it is determined that we violated prohibitions relating to the promotion of products for unapproved uses, we could be subject to substantial civil or criminal fines or damage awards and other sanctions such as consent decrees and corporate integrity agreements pursuant to which our activities would be subject to ongoing scrutiny and monitoring to ensure compliance with applicable laws and regulations. Any such fines, awards or other sanctions would have an adverse effect on our revenue, business, financial prospects and reputation.

If approved, tenapanor, RDX7675 and our other product candidates may cause or contribute to adverse medical events that we are required to report to regulatory agencies and if we fail to do so we could be subject to sanctions that would materially harm our business.

Some participants in clinical studies of tenapanor have reported adverse effects after being treated with tenapanor, including diarrhea, nausea, flatulence, abdominal discomfort, abdominal pain, abdominal distention and changes in electrolytes. If we are successful in commercializing any products, FDA and foreign regulatory agency regulations require that we report certain information about adverse medical events if those products may have caused or contributed to those adverse events. The timing of our obligation to report would be triggered by the date we become aware of the adverse event as well as the nature of the event. We may fail to report adverse events we become aware of within the prescribed timeframe. We may also fail to appreciate that we have become aware of a reportable adverse event, especially if it is not reported to us as an adverse event or if it is an adverse event that is unexpected or removed in time from the use of our products. If we fail to comply with our reporting obligations, the FDA or a foreign regulatory agency could take action, including criminal prosecution, the imposition of civil monetary penalties, seizure of our products or delay in approval or clearance of future products.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, collaboration partners, consultants and vendors may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements.

We are exposed to the risk that our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, collaboration partners, consultants and vendors may engage in fraudulent conduct or other illegal activity. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless and/or negligent conduct or unauthorized activities that violate: (1) FDA regulations, including those laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to the FDA; (2) manufacturing standards; (3) federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws and regulations; or (4) laws that require the reporting of true and accurate financial information and data. Specifically, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. These activities also include the improper use of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by employees and other third parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to be in compliance with such laws or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person or government could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, disgorgements, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, individual imprisonment, other sanctions, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations.

Failure to obtain regulatory approvals in foreign jurisdictions would prevent us from marketing our products internationally.

In order to market any product in the EEA (which is composed of the 28 Member States of the European Union plus Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein), and many other foreign jurisdictions, separate regulatory approvals are required. In the EEA, medicinal products can only be commercialized after obtaining a Marketing Authorization, or MA. Before granting the MA, the EMA or the competent authorities of the Member States of the EEA make an assessment of the risk-benefit balance of the product on the basis of scientific criteria concerning its quality, safety and efficacy.

The approval procedures vary among countries and can involve additional clinical testing, and the time required to obtain approval may differ from that required to obtain FDA approval. Clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries. Approval by the FDA does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries, and approval by one or more foreign regulatory authorities does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other foreign countries or by the FDA. However, a failure or delay in obtaining regulatory approval in one country may have a negative effect on the regulatory process in others. The foreign regulatory approval process may include all of the risks associated with obtaining FDA approval. We may not be able to file for regulatory approvals or to do so on a timely basis, and even if we do file we may not receive necessary approvals to commercialize our products in any market.

We and our collaboration partners, if any, may be subject to healthcare laws, regulation and enforcement; our failure or the failure of any such collaboration partners to comply with these laws could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial conditions.

Although we do not currently have any products on the market, once we begin commercializing our products, we and our collaboration partners, if any, may be subject to additional healthcare statutory and regulatory

[Table of Contents](#)

requirements and enforcement by the federal government and the states and foreign governments in which we conduct our business. The laws that may affect our ability to operate as a commercial organization include:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or paying remuneration, directly or indirectly, in exchange for or to induce either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, order or recommendation of, any good or service for which payment may be made under federal healthcare programs such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs;
- federal false claims laws which prohibit, among other things, individuals or entities from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment from Medicare, Medicaid, or other third-party payors that are false or fraudulent;
- federal criminal laws that prohibit executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or making false statements relating to healthcare matters;
- the federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, which governs the conduct of certain electronic healthcare transactions and protects the security and privacy of protected health information;
- the federal physician sunshine requirements under the Affordable Care Act, which requires manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies to report annually to the CMS information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians, other healthcare providers, and teaching hospitals, and ownership and investment interests held by physicians and other healthcare providers and their immediate family members;
- state law equivalents of each of the above federal laws, such as anti-kickback and false claims laws which may apply to items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers;
- state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the applicable compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources;
- state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or pricing information and marketing expenditures; and state laws governing the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways, thus complicating compliance efforts; and
- European and other foreign law equivalents of each of the laws, including reporting requirements detailing interactions with and payments to healthcare providers.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. The risk of our being found in violation of these laws is increased by the fact that many of them have not been fully interpreted by the regulatory authorities or the courts, and their provisions are open to a variety of interpretations. Further, the Affordable Care Act, among other things, amends the intent requirement of the federal anti-kickback and criminal health care fraud statutes. A person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of this statute or specific intent to violate it. In addition, the Affordable Care Act provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal anti-kickback statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the false claims statutes. Any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert our management's attention from the operation of our business. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other governmental laws and regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including civil and criminal penalties, damages, fines, the curtailment

[Table of Contents](#)

or restructuring of our operations, the exclusion from participation in federal and state healthcare programs and imprisonment, any of which could adversely affect our ability to market our products and adversely impact our financial results.

Legislative or regulatory healthcare reforms in the United States may make it more difficult and costly for us to obtain regulatory clearance or approval of our product candidates and to produce, market and distribute our products after clearance or approval is obtained.

From time to time, legislation is drafted and introduced in Congress that could significantly change the statutory provisions governing the regulatory clearance or approval, manufacture, and marketing of regulated products or the reimbursement thereof. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the FDA in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. Any new regulations or revisions or reinterpretations of existing regulations may impose additional costs or lengthen review times of our product candidates. We cannot determine what effect changes in regulations, statutes, legal interpretation or policies, when and if promulgated, enacted or adopted may have on our business in the future. Such changes could, among other things, require:

- additional clinical trials to be conducted prior to obtaining approval;
- changes to manufacturing methods;
- recall, replacement, or discontinuance of one or more of our products; and
- additional record keeping.

Each of these would likely entail substantial time and cost and could materially harm our business and our financial results. In addition, delays in receipt of or failure to receive regulatory clearances or approvals for any future products would harm our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, the full impact of recent healthcare reform and other changes in the healthcare industry and in healthcare spending is currently unknown, and may adversely affect our business model. In the United States, the Affordable Care Act was enacted in 2010 with a goal of reducing the cost of healthcare and substantially changing the way healthcare is financed by both government and private insurers. The Affordable Care Act, among other things, increased the minimum Medicaid rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program and extended the rebate program to individuals enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations, established annual fees and taxes on manufacturers of certain branded prescription drugs, and created a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D.

We expect that the new presidential administration and U.S. Congress will seek to modify, repeal, or otherwise invalidate all, or certain provisions of, the Affordable Care Act. Since taking office, President Trump has continued to support the repeal of all or portions of the Affordable Care Act. In January 2017, the House and Senate passed a budget resolution that authorizes congressional committees to draft legislation to repeal all or portions of the Affordable Care Act and permits such legislation to pass with a majority vote in the Senate. President Trump has also recently issued an executive order in which he stated that it is his administration's policy to seek the prompt repeal of the Affordable Care Act and directed executive departments and federal agencies to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of the provisions of the Affordable Care Act to the maximum extent permitted by law. There is still uncertainty with respect to the impact President Trump's administration and the U.S. Congress may have, if any, and any changes will likely take time to unfold, and could have an impact on coverage and reimbursement for healthcare items and services covered by plans that were authorized by the Affordable Care Act. However, we cannot predict the ultimate content, timing or effect of any healthcare reform legislation or the impact of potential legislation on us.

Other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. These new laws, among other things, included aggregate reductions of Medicare payments to

[Table of Contents](#)

providers of 2% per fiscal year that will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional action is taken by Congress, additional specific reductions in Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and an increase in the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. Recently, there has also been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which has resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products.

It is likely that federal and state legislatures within the United States and foreign governments will continue to consider changes to existing healthcare legislation, and the current administration and United States Congress have expressed a desire to repeal and/or modify the Affordable Care Act. We cannot predict the reform initiatives that may be adopted in the future or whether initiatives that have been adopted will be repealed or modified. The continuing efforts of the government, insurance companies, managed care organizations and other payors of healthcare services to contain or reduce costs of healthcare may adversely affect the demand for any drug products for which we may obtain regulatory approval, our ability to set a price that we believe is fair for our products, our ability to obtain coverage and reimbursement approval for a product, our ability to generate revenues and achieve or maintain profitability, and the level of taxes that we are required to pay.

Risks Related to Intellectual Property

We may become subject to claims alleging infringement of third parties' patents or proprietary rights and/or claims seeking to invalidate our patents, which would be costly, time consuming and, if successfully asserted against us, delay or prevent the development and commercialization of tenapanor, RDX7675 or our other product candidates, or prevent or delay the continued use of our drug discovery and development platform, including APECCS.

There have been many lawsuits and other proceedings asserting infringement or misappropriation of patents and other intellectual property rights in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries. There can be no assurances that we will not be subject to claims alleging that the manufacture, use or sale of tenapanor, RDX7675 or any other product candidates, or that the use of our drug discovery and development platform, including APECCS, infringes existing or future third-party patents, or that such claims, if any, will not be successful. Because patent applications can take many years to issue and may be confidential for 18 months or more after filing, and because pending patent claims can be revised before issuance, there may be applications now pending which may later result in issued patents that may be infringed by the manufacture, use or sale of tenapanor, RDX7675 or other product candidates or by the use of APECCS. Moreover, we may face patent infringement claims from non-practicing entities that have no relevant product revenue and against whom our own patent portfolio may thus have no deterrent effect. We may be unaware of one or more issued patents that would be infringed by the manufacture, sale or use of tenapanor, RDX7675 or our other product candidates, or by the use of APECCS.

We may be subject to third-party patent infringement claims in the future against us or our that would cause us to incur substantial expenses and, if successful against us, could cause us to pay substantial damages, including treble damages and attorney's fees if we are found to be willfully infringing a third party's patents. We may be required to indemnify future collaboration partners against such claims. We are not aware of any threatened or pending claims related to these matters, but in the future litigation may be necessary to defend against such claims. If a patent infringement suit were brought against us we could be forced to stop or delay research, development, manufacturing or sales of the product or product candidate that is the subject of the suit. In addition, if a patent infringement suit were brought against us regarding the use of APECCS, we could be forced to stop our use of APECCS or modify our processes to avoid infringement, which may not be possible at a reasonable cost, if at all, and which could result in substantial delay in our use of APECCS for the discovery of new product candidates or potential targets. As a result of patent infringement claims, or in order to avoid potential claims, we may choose to seek, or be required to seek, a license from the third party and would most likely be required to pay license fees or

[Table of Contents](#)

royalties or both. These licenses may not be available on acceptable terms, or at all. Even if we were able to obtain a license, we may be unable to maintain such licenses and the rights may be nonexclusive, which would give our competitors access to the same intellectual property. Ultimately, we could be prevented from commercializing a product, or forced to redesign it, or to cease our use of APECCS or some other aspect of our business operations if, as a result of actual or threatened patent infringement claims, we are unable to enter into licenses on acceptable terms, or unable to maintain such licenses when granted. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, such litigation can be expensive and time consuming to litigate and would divert management's attention from our core business. Any of these events could harm our business significantly.

In addition to infringement claims against us, if third parties prepare and file patent applications in the United States that also claim technology similar or identical to ours, we may have to participate in interference or derivation proceedings in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, or the USPTO, to determine which party is entitled to a patent on the disputed invention. We may also become involved in similar opposition proceedings in the European Patent Office or similar offices in other jurisdictions regarding our intellectual property rights with respect to our products and technology. Since patent applications are confidential for a period of time after filing, we cannot be certain that we were the first to file any patent application related to our product candidates.

If our intellectual property related to our product candidates is not adequate or if we are not able to protect our trade secrets or our confidential information, we may not be able to compete effectively in our market.

We rely upon a combination of patents, trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect the intellectual property related to our product candidates, our drug discovery and development platform and our development programs. Any disclosure to or misappropriation by third parties of our confidential or proprietary information could enable competitors to quickly duplicate or surpass our technological achievements, thus eroding our competitive position in our market.

The strength of patents in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical field involves complex legal and scientific questions and can be uncertain. The patent applications that we own or license may fail to result in issued patents in the United States or in foreign countries. Additionally, our research and development efforts may result in product candidates for which patent protection is limited or not available. Even if patents do successfully issue, third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability or scope thereof, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable. For example, U.S. patents can be challenged by any person before the new USPTO Patent Trial and Appeals Board at any time before one year after that person is served an infringement complaint based on the patents. Patents granted by the European Patent Office may be similarly opposed by any person within nine months from the publication of the grant. Similar proceedings are available in other jurisdictions, and in the United States, Europe and other jurisdictions third parties can raise questions of validity with a patent office even before a patent has granted. Furthermore, even if they are unchallenged, our patents and patent applications may not adequately protect our intellectual property or prevent others from designing around our claims. For example, a third party may develop a competitive product that provides therapeutic benefits similar to one or more of our product candidates but has a sufficiently different composition to fall outside the scope of our patent protection. If the breadth or strength of protection provided by the patents and patent applications we hold or pursue with respect to our product candidates is successfully challenged, then our ability to commercialize such product candidates could be negatively affected, and we may face unexpected competition that could have a material adverse impact on our business. Further, if we encounter delays in our clinical trials, the period of time during which we or our collaboration partners could market tenapanor or other product candidates under patent protection would be reduced.

Even where laws provide protection, costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and the outcome of such litigation would be uncertain. If we or one of our collaboration partners were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering the product candidate, the defendant could counterclaim that our patent is invalid and/or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity and/or unenforceability are

[Table of Contents](#)

commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, including lack of novelty, obviousness or non-enablement. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld relevant information from the USPTO, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability is unpredictable. With respect to validity, for example, we cannot be certain that there is no invalidating prior art, of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability against our intellectual property related to a product candidate, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on such product candidate. Such a loss of patent protection would have a material adverse impact on our business. Moreover, our competitors could counterclaim that we infringe their intellectual property, and some of our competitors have substantially greater intellectual property portfolios than we do.

We also rely on trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect proprietary know-how that may not be patentable, processes for which patents may be difficult to obtain and/or enforce and any other elements of our drug discovery and development processes that involve proprietary know-how, information or technology that is not covered by patents. Although we require all of our employees, consultants, advisors and any third parties who have access to our proprietary know-how, information or technology, to assign their inventions to us, and endeavor to execute confidentiality agreements with all such parties, we cannot be certain that we have executed such agreements with all parties who may have helped to develop our intellectual property or who had access to our proprietary information, nor can we be certain that our agreements will not be breached by such consultants, advisors or third parties, or by our former employees. The breach of such agreements by individuals or entities who are actively involved in the discovery and design of our potential drug candidates, or in the development of our discovery and design platform, including APECCS, could require us to pursue legal action to protect our trade secrets and confidential information, which would be expensive, and the outcome of which would be unpredictable. If we are not successful in prohibiting the continued breach of such agreements, our business could be negatively impacted. We cannot guarantee that our trade secrets and other confidential proprietary information will not be disclosed or that competitors will not otherwise gain access to our trade secrets or independently develop substantially equivalent information and techniques.

Further, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect proprietary rights to the same extent or in the same manner as the laws of the United States. As a result, we may encounter significant problems in protecting and defending our intellectual property both in the United States and abroad. If we are unable to prevent material disclosure of the intellectual property related to our technologies to third parties, we will not be able to establish or maintain a competitive advantage in our market, which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

If we do not obtain patent term extension in the United States under the Hatch-Waxman Act and in foreign countries under similar legislation, thereby potentially extending the term of marketing exclusivity for our product candidates, our business may be materially harmed.

Depending upon the timing, duration and specifics of FDA marketing approval of our product candidates, if any, one of the U.S. patents covering each of such approved product(s) or the use thereof may be eligible for up to five years of patent term restoration under the Hatch-Waxman Act. The Hatch-Waxman Act allows a maximum of one patent to be extended per FDA approved product. Patent term extension also may be available in certain foreign countries upon regulatory approval of our product candidates. Nevertheless, we may not be granted patent term extension either in the United States or in any foreign country because of, for example, failing to apply within applicable deadlines, failing to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise failing to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the term of extension, as well as the scope of patent protection during any such extension, afforded by the governmental authority could be less than we request.

If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or restoration, or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we will have the right to exclusively market our product will be shortened

[Table of Contents](#)

and our competitors may obtain approval of competing products following our patent expiration, and our revenue could be reduced, possibly materially.

Changes in U.S. patent law could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products.

As is the case with other biopharmaceutical companies, our success is heavily dependent on intellectual property, particularly patents. Obtaining and enforcing patents in the biopharmaceutical industry involve both technological and legal complexity.

Therefore, obtaining and enforcing biopharmaceutical patents is costly, time consuming and inherently uncertain. In addition, the United States has recently enacted and is currently implementing wide-ranging patent reform legislation, including the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act signed into law on September 16, 2011. That Act includes a number of significant changes to U.S. patent law. These include provisions that affect the way patent applications are prosecuted and new venues and opportunities for competitors to challenge patent portfolios. Because of that Act, the U.S. patent system is now a “first to file” system, which may make it more difficult to obtain patent protection for inventions and increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our or our collaboration partners’ patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our or our collaboration partners’ issued patents, all of which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. The United States Supreme Court has ruled on several patent cases in recent years, either narrowing the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakening the rights of patent owners in certain situations. In addition to increasing uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain patents in the future, this combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the value of patents once obtained. Depending on future actions by the U.S. Congress, the federal courts, and the USPTO, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that would weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce our existing patents and patents that we might obtain in the future.

Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.

The USPTO and various foreign patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other provisions to maintain patent applications and issued patents. Noncompliance with these requirements can result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, competitors might be able to enter the market earlier than would otherwise have been the case.

We may not be able to enforce our intellectual property rights throughout the world.

The laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in certain foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of some countries, particularly developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents and other intellectual property protection, especially those relating to life sciences. This could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or the misappropriation of our other intellectual property rights. For example, many foreign countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner must grant licenses to third parties.

Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions, whether or not successful, could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business. Furthermore, while we intend to protect our intellectual property rights in our expected significant markets, we cannot ensure that we will be able to initiate or maintain similar efforts in all jurisdictions in which we may wish to market our products. Accordingly, our efforts to protect our intellectual property rights in such countries may be inadequate. In addition, changes in the law and legal decisions by courts in the United States and foreign countries may affect our ability to obtain and enforce adequate intellectual property protection for our technology.

[Table of Contents](#)

We may be subject to claims that we or our employees have misappropriated the intellectual property, including know-how or trade secrets, of a third party, or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.

Many of our employees, consultants and contractors were previously employed at or engaged by other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. Some of these employees, consultants and contractors, executed proprietary rights, non-disclosure and non-competition agreements in connection with such previous employment. Although we try to ensure that our employees, consultants and contractors do not use the intellectual property and other proprietary information or know-how or trade secrets of others in their work for us, and do not perform work for us that is in conflict with their obligations to another employer or any other entity, we may be subject to claims that we or these employees, consultants and contractors have used or disclosed such intellectual property, including know-how, trade secrets or other proprietary information. In addition, an employee, advisor or consultant who performs work for us may have obligations to a third party that are in conflict with their obligations to us, and as a result such third party may claim an ownership interest in the intellectual property arising out of work performed for us. We are not aware of any threatened or pending claims related to these matters, but in the future litigation may be necessary to defend against such claims. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel, or access to consultants and contractors. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

In addition, while we typically require our employees, consultants and contractors who may be involved in the development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who in fact develops intellectual property that we regard as our own, which may result in claims by or against us related to the ownership of such intellectual property. If we fail in prosecuting or defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights. Even if we are successful in prosecuting or defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to our management and scientific personnel.

Risks Related to Our Common Stock

Our stock price may be volatile and our stockholders may not be able to resell shares of our common stock at or above the price they paid.

The trading price of our common stock is highly volatile and could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to various factors, some of which are beyond our control. These factors include those discussed in this “Risk Factors” section and others such as:

- results from, or any delays in, clinical trial programs relating to our product candidates, including the ongoing and planned clinical trials for tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940;
- ability to commercialize or obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, or delays in commercializing or obtaining regulatory approval;
- announcements of regulatory approval, a complete response letter or a refuse to file letter to tenapanor or RDX7675, or specific label restrictions or patient populations for its use, or changes or delays in the regulatory review process;
- announcements relating to future collaboration partnerships;
- announcements of therapeutic innovations or new products by us or our competitors;
- adverse actions taken by regulatory agencies with respect to our clinical trials, manufacturing supply chain or sales and marketing activities;
- changes or developments in laws or regulations applicable to our product candidates;
- the success of our testing and clinical trials;

Table of Contents

- failure to meet any of our projected timelines or goals with regard to the clinical development of any of our product candidates
- the success of our efforts to acquire or license or discover additional product candidates;
- any intellectual property infringement actions in which we may become involved;
- the success of our efforts to obtain adequate intellectual property protection for our product candidates;
- announcements concerning our competitors or the pharmaceutical industry in general;
- achievement of expected product sales and profitability;
- manufacture, supply or distribution shortages;
- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our operating results;
- FDA or other U.S. or foreign regulatory actions affecting us or our industry or other healthcare reform measures in the United States;
- changes in financial estimates or recommendations by securities analysts;
- trading volume of our common stock;
- sales of our common stock by us, our executive officers and directors or our stockholders in the future;
- general economic and market conditions and overall fluctuations in the United States equity markets; and
- the loss of any of our key scientific or management personnel.

In addition, the stock markets in general, and the markets for pharmaceutical, biopharmaceutical and biotechnology stocks in particular, have experienced extreme volatility that may have been unrelated to the operating performance of the issuer. These broad market fluctuations may adversely affect the trading price or liquidity of our common stock. In the past, when the market price of a stock has been volatile, holders of that stock have sometimes instituted securities class action litigation against the issuer. If any of our stockholders were to bring such a lawsuit against us, we could incur substantial costs defending the lawsuit and the attention of our management would be diverted from the operation of our business, which could seriously harm our financial position. Any adverse determination in litigation could also subject us to significant liabilities.

One of our principal stockholders own a significant percentage of our stock and, together with our management, will be able to exert significant control over matters subject to stockholder approval.

As of December 31, 2016, entities affiliated with New Enterprise Associates or NEA, a venture capital fund associated with one of our directors, collectively beneficially hold approximately 31.8% of our capital stock, including warrants exercisable for shares of our common stock, and NEA together with our executive officers and directors beneficially owned approximately 33.7% of our capital stock, including warrants and stock options exercisable for shares of our common stock within sixty (60) days of December 31, 2016. Therefore, these stockholders may be able to determine all matters requiring stockholder approval, and the entities affiliated with New Enterprise Associates alone, will have significant ability to influence decisions through their ownership position. For example, these stockholders may be able to control elections of directors, amendments of our organizational documents, or approval of any merger, sale of assets, or other major corporate transaction. This may prevent or discourage unsolicited acquisition proposals or offers for our common stock that certain stockholders may feel are in their best interest as one of our stockholders.

If we sell shares of our common stock in future financings, stockholders may experience immediate dilution and, as a result, our stock price may decline.

We may from time to time issue additional shares of common stock at a discount from the current trading price of our common stock. As a result, our stockholders would experience immediate dilution upon the purchase

[Table of Contents](#)

of any shares of our common stock sold at such discount. In addition, as opportunities present themselves, we may enter into financing or similar arrangements in the future, including the issuance of debt securities, preferred stock or common stock. If we issue common stock or securities convertible into common stock, our common stockholders would experience additional dilution and, as a result, our stock price may decline.

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market could cause our stock price to fall.

If our existing stockholders sell, or indicate an intention to sell, substantial amounts of our common stock in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline. As of December 31, 2016, we had 47,309,422 shares of common stock outstanding. Of those shares, approximately 14.3 million, were held by current directors, executive officers and other affiliates, or may otherwise be subject to Rule 144 under the Securities Act of 1933, or the Securities Act.

In addition, as of December 31, 2016, approximately 2.7 million shares of common stock that are subject to outstanding options, were eligible for sale in the public market to the extent permitted by the provisions of various vesting schedules, and Rule 144 and Rule 701 under the Securities Act. In addition, approximately 2.2 million shares that are subject to outstanding warrants are eligible for sale in the public market. If these additional shares of common stock are sold, or if it is perceived that they will be sold, in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline.

The holders of approximately 5.6 million shares of our outstanding common stock as of December 31, 2016, are entitled to rights with respect to the registration of their shares under the Securities Act. Registration of these shares under the Securities Act would result in the shares becoming freely tradable without restriction under the Securities Act, except for shares purchased by affiliates. Any sales of securities by these stockholders could have a material adverse effect on the trading price of our common stock.

Provisions in our charter documents and under Delaware law could discourage a takeover that stockholders may consider favorable and may lead to entrenchment of management.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws contain provisions that could significantly reduce the value of our shares to a potential acquirer or delay or prevent changes in control or changes in our management without the consent of our board of directors. The provisions in our charter documents include the following:

- a classified board of directors with three-year staggered terms, which may delay the ability of stockholders to change the membership of a majority of our board of directors;
- no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which limits the ability of minority stockholders to elect director candidates;
- the exclusive right of our board of directors to elect a director to fill a vacancy created by the expansion of the board of directors or the resignation, death or removal of a director, which prevents stockholders from being able to fill vacancies on our board of directors;
- the required approval of at least 66 2/3% of the shares entitled to vote to remove a director for cause, and the prohibition on removal of directors without cause;
- the ability of our board of directors to authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock and to determine the price and other terms of those shares, including preferences and voting rights, without stockholder approval, which could be used to significantly dilute the ownership of a hostile acquirer;
- the ability of our board of directors to alter our bylaws without obtaining stockholder approval;
- the required approval of at least 66 2/3% of the shares entitled to vote at an election of directors to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws or repeal the provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation regarding the election and removal of directors;

Table of Contents

- a prohibition on stockholder action by written consent, which forces stockholder action to be taken at an annual or special meeting of our stockholders;
- the requirement that a special meeting of stockholders may be called only by the chairman of the board of directors, the chief executive officer, the president or the board of directors, which may delay the ability of our stockholders to force consideration of a proposal or to take action, including the removal of directors; and
- advance notice procedures that stockholders must comply with in order to nominate candidates to our board of directors or to propose matters to be acted upon at a stockholders' meeting, which may discourage or deter a potential acquiror from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect the acquiror's own slate of directors or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

In addition, these provisions would apply even if we were to receive an offer that some stockholders may consider beneficial.

We are also subject to the anti-takeover provisions contained in Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. Under Section 203, a corporation may not, in general, engage in a business combination with any holder of 15% or more of its capital stock unless the holder has held the stock for three years or, among other exceptions, the board of directors has approved the transaction.

Claims for indemnification by our directors and officers may reduce our available funds to satisfy successful third-party claims against us and may reduce the amount of money available to us.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws provide that we will indemnify our directors and officers, in each case to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law.

In addition, as permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated bylaws and our indemnification agreements that we have entered into with our directors and officers provide that:

- We will indemnify our directors and officers for serving us in those capacities or for serving other business enterprises at our request, to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Delaware law provides that a corporation may indemnify such person if such person acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the registrant and, with respect to any criminal proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe such person's conduct was unlawful.
- We may, in our discretion, indemnify employees and agents in those circumstances where indemnification is permitted by applicable law.
- We are required to advance expenses, as incurred, to our directors and officers in connection with defending a proceeding, except that such directors or officers shall undertake to repay such advances if it is ultimately determined that such person is not entitled to indemnification.
- We will not be obligated pursuant to our amended and restated bylaws to indemnify a person with respect to proceedings initiated by that person against us or our other indemnitees, except with respect to proceedings authorized by our board of directors or brought to enforce a right to indemnification.
- The rights conferred in our amended and restated bylaws are not exclusive, and we are authorized to enter into indemnification agreements with our directors, officers, employees and agents and to obtain insurance to indemnify such persons.
- We may not retroactively amend our amended and restated bylaw provisions to reduce our indemnification obligations to directors, officers, employees and agents.

We do not currently intend to pay dividends on our common stock, and, consequently, our stockholders' ability to achieve a return on their investment will depend on appreciation in the price of our common stock.

We do not currently intend to pay any cash dividends on our common stock for the foreseeable future. We currently intend to invest our future earnings, if any, to fund our growth. Additionally, the terms of our loan and

[Table of Contents](#)

security agreements could restrict our ability to pay dividends. Therefore, our stockholders are not likely to receive any dividends on our common stock for the foreseeable future. Since we do not intend to pay dividends, our stockholders' ability to receive a return on their investment will depend on any future appreciation in the market value of our common stock. There is no guarantee that our common stock will appreciate or even maintain the price at which our holders have purchased it.

ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

Our headquarters is currently located in Fremont, California, and consists of approximately 72,500 square feet of leased office and laboratory space under a lease that currently expires in September 2021. We believe that our existing facilities are adequate for our current needs. If we determine that additional or new facilities are needed in the future, we believe that sufficient options would be available to us on commercially reasonable terms.

ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

From time to time, we may be involved in legal proceedings arising in the ordinary course of business. We believe that as of December 31, 2016, there is no litigation pending that would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable.

PART II

ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

Price Range of Common Stock

Our common stock commenced trading on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "ARDX" on June 19, 2014. Prior to that date, there was no public trading market for our common stock. The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high and low reported sales prices of our common stock as reported on The NASDAQ Global Select Market:

	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>
Year ended December 31, 2016:		
First Quarter	\$ 17.90	\$ 6.84
Second Quarter	\$ 9.81	\$ 6.36
Third Quarter	\$ 13.29	\$ 8.42
Fourth Quarter	\$ 16.30	\$10.55
	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>
Year Ended December 31, 2015:		
First Quarter	\$ 27.99	\$13.00
Second Quarter	\$ 17.66	\$ 7.95
Third Quarter	\$ 22.48	\$15.00
Fourth Quarter	\$ 21.27	\$15.13

As of December 31, 2016, there were 50 holders of record of our common stock. The last reported sale price of the common stock on February 10, 2017 on The NASDAQ Global Select Market was \$ 11.15 per share.

Dividends

We have never declared or paid cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain any future earnings to finance the growth and development of our business.

Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

The information required by Item 701 of Regulation S-K was previously included in our Quarterly Reports on 10-Q for the quarters ended June 30, 2016 and September 30, 2016, and in our Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on July 20, 2016, and accordingly such information is omitted pursuant to Item 5(a) of Form 10-K.

Use of Proceeds

Not applicable.

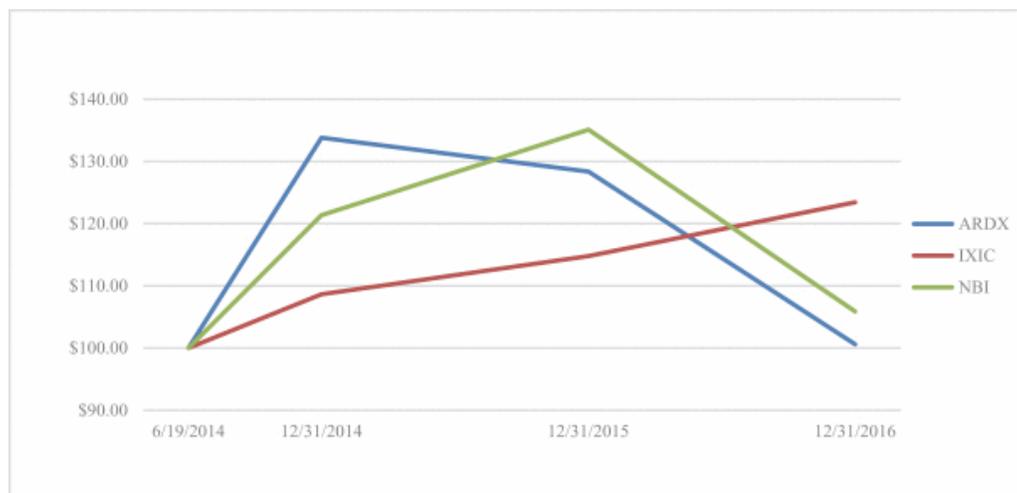
Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

Not applicable.

[Table of Contents](#)

Stock Price Performance Graph

The following stock performance graph compares our total stock return with the total return for (i) the NASDAQ Composite Index (depicted in the graph as “IXIC”) and the (ii) the NASDAQ Biotechnology Index (depicted in the graph as “NBI”) for the period from June 19, 2014 (the date our common stock commenced trading on The NASDAQ Global Market) through December 31, 2016. The figures represented below assume an investment of \$100 in our common stock at the closing price of \$14.11 on June 19, 2014 and in the NASDAQ Composite Index and the NASDAQ Biotechnology Index on June 19, 2014 and the reinvestment of dividends into shares of common stock. The comparisons in the table are required by the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, and are not intended to forecast or be indicative of possible future performance of our common stock. This graph shall not be deemed “soliciting material” or be deemed “filed” for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, or otherwise subject to the liabilities under that Section, and shall not be deemed to be incorporated by reference into any of our filings under the Securities Act whether made before or after the date hereof and irrespective of any general incorporation language in any such filing.



\$100 invested in stock or index	Ticker	June 19, 2014	December 31, 2014	December 31, 2015	December 31, 2016
Ardelyx, Inc	ARDX	\$100.00	\$ 133.88	\$ 128.42	\$ 100.64
NASDAQ Composite Index	IXIC	\$100.00	\$ 108.64	\$ 114.87	\$ 123.49
NASDAQ Biotechnology Index	NBI	\$100.00	\$ 121.38	\$ 135.24	\$ 105.92

[Table of Contents](#)

ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The data set forth below is not necessarily indicative of the results of future operations and should be read in conjunction with the financial statements and the notes included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K and also with “ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS” and our financial statements and the related notes included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
	(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)				
Statement of Operations Data:					
Revenue:					
Licensing revenue	\$ —	\$ 21,611	\$ 18,394	\$ 8,063	\$ 3,182
Collaborative development revenue	—	2,415	13,229	20,865	2,228
Total revenue	—	24,026	31,623	28,928	5,410
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	94,161	39,885	25,900	28,093	10,184
General and administrative	18,734	13,530	7,287	3,700	4,031
Total operating expenses	112,895	53,415	33,187	31,793	14,215
Loss from operations	(112,895)	(29,389)	(1,564)	(2,865)	(8,805)
Other income (expense), net	508	(261)	10	(52)	(30)
Change in fair value of preferred stock warrant liability	—	—	(1,593)	(3,506)	(950)
Loss before provision for income taxes	(112,387)	(29,650)	(3,147)	(6,423)	(9,785)
Benefit from (provision for) income taxes	—	29	(67)	(141)	—
Net loss	\$ (112,387)	\$ (29,621)	\$ (3,214)	\$ (6,564)	\$ (9,785)
Net loss per common share, basic and diluted	\$ (2.80)	\$ (1.29)	\$ (0.31)	\$ (5.82)	\$ (11.32)
Weighted-average number of common shares used in net loss per share, basic and diluted	40,118,522	22,892,640	10,248,337	1,127,948	864,020

	As of December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
	(in thousands)				
Balance Sheet Data:					
Cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments	\$ 200,823	\$ 107,004	\$ 107,286	\$ 34,435	\$ 32,903
Total assets	213,131	116,946	113,414	42,904	37,884
Deferred revenue	—	—	47,053	40,298	32,662
Convertible preferred stock warrant liability	—	—	—	6,456	2,950
Convertible preferred stock	—	—	—	56,155	56,155
Accumulated deficit	(213,875)	(101,488)	(71,867)	(68,653)	(62,089)
Total stockholders’ equity (deficit)	193,151	108,901	60,682	(63,479)	(57,392)

ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with the section of this report entitled "Selected Financial Data" and our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this report. This discussion and other parts of this report contain forward-looking statements that involve risk and uncertainties, such as statements of our plans, objectives, expectations and intentions. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in these forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to such differences include, but are not limited to, those discussed in the section of this report entitled "Risk Factors."

OVERVIEW

We are focused on enhancing the way patients with cardiorenal and gastrointestinal, or GI, diseases are treated by using the gut as the gateway to delivering medicines that matter. We have pioneered the development of small molecule therapeutics that act predominantly in the GI tract, thereby avoiding potentially negative side effects on the rest of the body. We are focused on enhancing the way patients with cardiorenal and gastrointestinal, or GI, diseases are treated by using the gut as the gateway to delivering medicines that matter. We have pioneered the development of small molecule therapeutics that act predominantly in the GI tract, thereby avoiding potentially negative side effects on the rest of the body.

Our strategy is to evolve from R&D-focused to an integrated biotech company, by building cardiorenal and GI businesses in the United States, while exploring a variety of strategic commercial options outside the United States. We are developing several products and programs focused on underserved medical needs including the following:

Cardiorenal Portfolio

- Tenapanor: Phase 3 clinical development for treatment of ESRD patients on dialysis suffering from elevated phosphate, or hyperphosphatemia
- RDX7675: Phase 3 clinical development for the treatment of patients with hyperkalemia, common in patients with CKD and/or heart failure
- Research Programs: we are evaluating small-molecule approaches to treat hyperkalemia in order to significantly reduce pill burden and we are leveraging our knowledge of phosphorus absorption to discover improved approaches.

Gastrointestinal Portfolio

- Tenapanor: Phase 3 clinical development for treatment of IBS-C patients
- RDX8940: IND filed in late 2016 to begin clinical studies.
- Research Programs: we are leveraging our knowledge of the mechanisms of tenapanor in order to discover new agents that modulate transport of ions and other processes in the gut.

Since commencing operations in October 2007, substantially all our efforts have been dedicated to our research and development activities, including developing our clinical product candidates, tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940, and developing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. We have not generated any revenues from product sales and have no products approved for commercialization. As of December 31, 2016, we had an accumulated deficit of \$213.9 million.

We expect that our operating losses will substantially increase for the foreseeable future as we prepare for the commercialization of tenapanor and RDX7675, incur development and manufacturing costs for tenapanor, RDX7675, and RDX8940, including costs associated with completing the on-going Phase 3 development programs for tenapanor, completing the onset-of-action and a Phase 3 clinical trial for RDX7675, and

[Table of Contents](#)

commencing clinical development of RDX8940, and as we continue our research activities. To date, we have funded our operations from the sale and issuance of common stock, convertible preferred stock, and funds from our former collaborations partnership with AstraZenecaAB, or AstraZeneca, and Sanofi SA, or Sanofi.

On June 24, 2014, we completed our initial public offering, or IPO, and sold 4,928,900 shares of our common stock. We received cash proceeds of \$61.2 million, net of underwriting discounts and commissions and expenses paid by us.

In June 2015, we closed a private placement financing in which we raised approximately \$77.8 million in gross proceeds or \$74.3 million in net proceeds, after deducting issuance costs.

In January 2016, we completed an underwritten public offering of 8,625,000 shares of common stock at an offering price of \$10.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$86.3 million. This offering was completed under our shelf registration statement filed on July 13, 2015, and we received net proceeds from the offering of approximately \$80.8 million, after deducting the underwriters' discounts and commissions and offering expenses.

In July 2016, we sold and issued an aggregate of 12,600,230 shares of common stock in a private placement transaction at an offering price of \$8.73 per share for gross proceeds of \$110.0 million. We received net proceeds from the offering of approximately \$109.8 million, after deducting offering expenses.

AstraZeneca AB

In October 2012, we entered into a collaboration partnership with AstraZeneca for the worldwide development and commercialization of tenapanor. Under the terms of the AstraZeneca collaboration partnership agreement, or the AstraZeneca Agreement, we received an aggregate of \$75 million in up-front license and milestone fees. The amounts were recorded as deferred revenue when received and were recognized as revenue on a straight-line basis over the remaining estimated period of performance under the AstraZeneca Agreement.

In June 2015, we entered into a termination agreement with AstraZeneca (the "Termination Agreement") pursuant to which all licenses granted to AstraZeneca to our portfolio of NHE3 inhibitors, including our lead product candidate, tenapanor, were terminated, except for the limited purpose of allowing AstraZeneca to satisfy its obligations under the Termination Agreement. As the AstraZeneca Agreement was terminated in June 2015, we recognized the remaining deferred revenue balance of \$43.1 million during the three months ended June 30, 2015. In the three months ended June 30, 2015, we recorded a \$15.0 million payment for the return of the licenses as well as a \$10.0 million payment for reimbursement of research and development expenses and the acceleration of the transfer of information and materials as a reduction in licensing revenue in the consolidated statements of operations. There has been no recognition of licensing revenue or collaborative development revenue since the termination of the AstraZeneca agreement in 2015.

Sanofi SA

In February 2014, we entered into an option and license agreement with Sanofi, or the Sanofi Agreement, under which we granted Sanofi an exclusive worldwide license to conduct research utilizing our program evaluating small molecule NaP2b inhibitors for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in CKD patients on dialysis. In addition, Sanofi had the option under the Sanofi Agreement to obtain an exclusive license to develop, manufacture and commercialize our NaP2b inhibitors. Under the Sanofi Agreement, we received an upfront payment of \$1.25 million in March 2014, which was fully recognized as licensing revenue in May 2014 after we completed our obligation to provide Sanofi the background know-how, listed patents, and materials described in the Sanofi Agreement.

The Sanofi Agreement was terminated effective September 30, 2015 and all rights were returned to Ardelyx. There was no payment associated with termination and the return of rights to Ardelyx.

FINANCIAL OPERATIONS OVERVIEW

Revenue

We have not generated any revenue from product sales. Our revenue to date has been generated from non-refundable license payments and reimbursements for research and development expenses under our license agreements with AstraZeneca and Sanofi, both of which were terminated in 2015. We recognize revenue from upfront payments ratably over the term of our estimated period of performance under the agreement, which we consider to be licensing revenue. Should any of our agreements contain event based payments, such payments are recorded as revenue when we achieve the underlying milestone if it is deemed to be a substantive milestone at the date the arrangement is entered into. To the extent that non-substantive milestones are achieved and we have remaining performance obligations, milestones are deferred and recognized as revenue over the estimated remaining period of performance. Reimbursements from AstraZeneca for development costs incurred under our license and collaboration agreement with them were classified as collaborative development revenue. There has been no recognition of licensing revenue or collaborative development revenue since the termination of the AstraZeneca agreement in 2015.

Research and Development Expenses

We recognize all research and development expenses as they are incurred to support the discovery, development and manufacturing of our product candidates. Research and development expenses consist of the following:

- external research and development expenses incurred under agreements with consultants, third-party contract research organizations and investigative sites where a substantial portion of our clinical studies are conducted, and with contract manufacturing organizations where our clinical supplies are produced;
- expenses associated with supplies and materials consumed in connection with our research operations;
- employee-related expenses, which include salaries, benefits, travel and stock-based compensation;
- other costs associated with regulatory, clinical and non-clinical development activities; and
- facilities and other allocated expenses, which include direct and allocated expenses for rent and maintenance of facilities, depreciation and amortization expense, information technology expense and other supplies.

We expect to continue to make substantial investments in research and development activities as we progress the development of tenapanor, RDX7675, RDX8940 and our other our product candidates, advance our research programs into the preclinical stage and continue our early stage research including further development of our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. The process of conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials necessary to obtain regulatory approval is costly and time consuming. We may never succeed in achieving marketing approval for any of our product candidates. The probability of success of each of the product candidates may be affected by numerous factors, including preclinical data, clinical data, competition, manufacturing capability and commercial viability.

The successful development of our product candidates is highly uncertain and may not result in approved products. Completion dates and completion costs can vary significantly for each product candidate and are difficult to predict. Given the uncertainty associated with clinical trial enrollment and the risks inherent in the development process, we are unable to determine the duration and completion costs of current or future clinical trials of our product candidates or if and to what extent we will generate revenues from the commercialization and sale of any of our product candidates. We anticipate that we will make determinations as to which programs to pursue and how much funding to direct to each program on an ongoing basis in response to the scientific and clinical success of each product candidate, as well as an ongoing assessment as to each product candidate's commercial potential. We will need to raise additional capital and will seek additional collaboration partnerships in the future in order to complete the development and commercialization of our product candidates, including tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940.

[Table of Contents](#)

General and Administrative

General and administrative expenses include personnel costs, travel expenses and other expenses for outside professional services, including legal, human resources, audit and accounting services. Personnel costs includes salaries, bonuses, benefits, facilities and other allocated expenses and stock-based compensation. We expect general and administrative expense to increase as we expand our operating activities to prepare for a potential commercial launch of tenapanor and to support our operations as a public company, including, among other things, increased expenses related to legal, accounting, regulatory and tax-related services associated with maintaining compliance with exchange listing and SEC requirements, directors' and officers' liability insurance premiums and investor relations related fees.

Income Taxes

Due to a current period loss, we did not record a provision for income taxes for the year ended December 31, 2016.

We recorded income tax benefit for the year ended December 31, 2015 primarily due to the provision to return true-up for the year ended December 31, 2014.

For the tax year ended December 31, 2014, the Company recorded an income tax provision due to the minimum taxes which resulted from upfront and milestone payments received from AstraZeneca.

Our deferred assets continue to be subject to full valuation allowance for the tax years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015. A valuation allowance is recorded when it is more likely than not that all or some portion of the deferred income tax assets will not be realized. We regularly assess the need for a valuation allowance against our deferred income tax assets by considering both positive and negative evidence related to whether it is more likely than not that our deferred income tax assets will be realized. In evaluating our ability to recover our deferred income tax assets within the jurisdiction from which they arise, we consider all available positive and negative evidence, including scheduled reversals of deferred income tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, tax-planning strategies, and results of recent operations.

CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICES AND ESTIMATES

A detailed discussion of our significant accounting policies can be found in Note 1 of the Notes to Financial Statements, and the impact and risks associated with our accounting policies are discussed throughout this Annual Report on Form 10-K and in the footnotes to the financial statements. Critical accounting policies are those that require significant judgment and/or estimates by management at the time that financial statements are prepared such that materially different results might have been reported if other assumptions had been made. We consider certain accounting policies related to revenue recognition, accrued liabilities, and use of estimates to be critical policies. These estimates form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities. We base our estimates and judgments on historical experience and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ materially from these estimates.

We believe the following policies to be the most critical to an understanding of our financial condition and results of operations because they require us to make estimates, assumptions and judgments about matters that are inherently uncertain.

Revenue Recognition

Research Activities

Revenue from research activities made under collaboration partnership agreements are recognized as the services are provided and when there is persuasive evidence that an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the price is fixed or determinable, and collectability is reasonably assured. Revenue generated from research and license agreements typically includes up-front signing or license fees, cost reimbursements, research services, minimum sublicense fees, milestone payments, and royalties on future licensees' product sales.

[Table of Contents](#)

Multiple-Element Arrangements

For revenue agreements with multiple-element arrangements, such as license and development agreements, we allocate revenue to each non-contingent unit of accounting based on the relative selling price of each unit. When applying the relative selling price method, we determine the selling price for each deliverable using vendor-specific objective evidence or third-party evidence. If neither exists, we use the best estimate of selling price for that deliverable. Revenue allocated is then recognized when the four basic revenue recognition criteria are met for each unit. Our obligations under the agreements may include the transfer of intellectual property rights in the form of licenses, obligations to provide research and development services and obligations to participate on certain development committees with the collaboration partner. We make judgments that affect the period over which we recognize revenue. On a quarterly basis, we review our estimated period of performance for our license revenue based on the progress under the arrangement and account for the impact of any changes in estimated periods of performance on a prospective basis.

Cost Reimbursement

We recognize cost reimbursement revenue under collaboration partnership agreements as the related research and development costs for services are rendered. Deferred revenue represents the portion of research or license payments received that have not been earned.

Milestone

A milestone is considered substantive when the consideration earned from the achievement of the milestone (i) is commensurate with either our performance to achieve the milestone or the enhancement of value of the item delivered as a result of a specific outcome resulting from our performance to achieve the milestone, (ii) relates solely to past performance and (iii) is reasonable relative to all deliverables and payment terms in the arrangement. Such payments that are contingent upon the achievement of a substantive milestone are recognized entirely as revenue in the period in which the milestone is achieved. To the extent that non-substantive milestones are achieved and we have remaining performance obligations, milestones are deferred and recognized as revenue over the estimated remaining period of performance. If there were no remaining performance obligations, we recognize the revenue in the period it is earned.

Accrued Research and Development Expenses

As part of the process of preparing our financial statements, we are required to estimate our accrued expenses. This process involves reviewing open contracts and purchase orders, communicating with our personnel to identify services that have been performed on our behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred for the service when we have not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of the actual cost. The majority of our service providers invoice us monthly in arrears for services performed or when contractual milestones are met. We make estimates of our accrued expenses as of each balance sheet date in our financial statements based on facts and circumstances known to us at that time. We periodically confirm the accuracy of our estimates with the service providers and make adjustments if necessary. Examples of estimated accrued research and development expenses include fees paid to:

- CROs in connection with clinical studies;
- investigative sites in connection with clinical studies;
- vendors related to product manufacturing, development and distribution of clinical supplies;
- collaborator entities in connection with our collaboration agreements; and
- vendors in connection with preclinical development activities.

[Table of Contents](#)

We record expenses related to clinical studies and manufacturing development activities based on our estimates of the services received and efforts expended pursuant to contracts with multiple CROs and manufacturing vendors that conduct and manage these activities on our behalf. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation, vary from contract to contract, and may result in uneven payment flows. There may be instances in which payments made to our vendors will exceed the level of services provided and result in a prepayment of the expense. Payments under some of these contracts depend on factors such as the successful enrollment of subjects and the completion of clinical trial milestones. In accruing service fees, we estimate the time period over which services will be performed, enrollment of subjects, number of sites activated and the level of effort to be expended in each period. If the actual timing of the performance of services or the level of effort varies from our estimate, we adjust the accrued or prepaid expense balance accordingly. Although we do not expect our estimates to be materially different from amounts actually incurred, if our estimates of the status and timing of services performed differ from the actual status and timing of services performed, we may report amounts that are too high or too low in any particular period. To date, there have been no material differences from our estimates to the amounts actually incurred.

Stock-Based Compensation

We estimate the fair value of stock options and Employee Stock Purchase Plan or ESPP shares using the Black-Scholes valuation model. The Black-Scholes model requires the input of highly subjective assumptions. The most significant assumptions are our estimates of the expected volatility and the expected term of the award. The Black-Scholes option-pricing model requires the use of highly subjective assumptions which determine the fair value of stock-based awards. These assumptions include:

Expected Term—The Company has very limited historical information to develop reasonable expectations about future exercise patterns and post-vesting employment termination behavior for its stock-option grants. As such, the expected term was estimated using the simplified method whereby the expected term equals the arithmetic average of the vesting term and the original contractual term of the option.

Expected Volatility—Since the Company has limited information on the volatility of its common stock due to no significant trading history, the expected stock price volatility was calculated based on the average volatility for comparable publicly traded biopharmaceutical companies over a period equal to the expected term of the stock option grants. The comparable companies were chosen based on their similar size, stage in the life cycle, and financial leverage of the Company.

Risk-Free Interest Rate—The risk-free interest rate assumption is based on the zero-coupon U.S. Treasury instruments on the date of grant with a maturity date consistent with the expected term of the Company's stock option grants.

Expected Dividend—To date, the Company has not declared or paid any cash dividends and does not have any plans to do so in the future. Therefore, the Company used an expected dividend yield of zero.

As required, we review our valuation assumptions at each grant date and, as a result, we are likely to change our valuation assumptions used to value employee stock-based awards granted in future periods. Employee and director stock-based compensation costs are to be recognized over the vesting period of the award, and we have elected to use the straight-line attribution method. Forfeitures are to be estimated at the time of grant and revised, if necessary, in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates. We estimate forfeitures based on historical experience.

Restricted stock units or RSUs are measured at the fair value of our common stock on the date of grant and expensed over the period of vesting using the straight-line attribution approach.

[Table of Contents](#)

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Comparison of the Years Ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

Revenue

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(in thousands)	
Licensing revenue	\$ —	\$ 21,611
Dollar change from prior year	(21,611)	
Percent change from prior year	-100%	

Licensing revenue for the year ended December 31, 2016 was zero, a decrease of \$21.6 million, or 100%, compared to \$21.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. Licensing revenue for 2015 was related to the recognition of revenue from upfront and milestone payments under the AstraZeneca agreement. Because the AstraZeneca agreement was terminated in June 2015, there has been no further recognition of revenue related to the upfront and milestone payments under such agreement since that time.

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(in thousands)	
Collaborative development revenue	\$ —	\$ 2,415
Dollar change from prior year	(2,415)	
Percent change from prior year	-100%	

Collaborative development revenue consists of our development expenses that were reimbursable to us by AstraZeneca under the AstraZeneca agreement. Collaborative development revenue for the year ended December 31, 2016 was zero, a decrease of \$2.4 million, or 100%, compared to \$2.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The decrease was due the termination of our collaboration with AstraZeneca and the related cessation of reimbursement of research and development expenses.

Research and Development

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(in thousands)	
Research and development	\$ 94,161	\$ 39,885
Dollar change from prior year	54,276	
Percent change from prior year	136%	

Research and development expenses were \$94.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2016, an increase of \$54.3 million, or 136%, compared to \$39.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase consisted of a \$44.1 million increase in our external program costs and a \$10.2 million increase in our internal program costs. The increase in external program costs of \$44.1 million was primarily due to expenses incurred for clinical development activities associated with tenapanor including the commencement of two Phase 3 clinical trials in IBS-C, a long term safety trial, and one Phase 3 clinical trial in hyperphosphatemia, as well as clinical manufacturing and process development activities associated with tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940.

The increase in our internal costs of \$10.2 million was primarily due to an increase in personnel, facility and other costs, primarily related to an increase in research and development headcount to support the growth of our development activities.

[Table of Contents](#)**General and Administrative**

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(in thousands)	
General and administrative	\$ 18,734	\$ 13,530
Dollar change from prior year	5,204	
Percent change from prior year	38%	

General and administrative expenses were \$18.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2016, an increase of \$5.2 million, or 38%, compared to \$13.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase was primarily due to increases of \$2.7 million in personnel and other costs including share-based compensation, as a result of an increase in headcount, \$1.4 million in professional fees and \$1.1 million in market research and pre-commercialization activities.

Comparison of the Years Ended December 31, 2015 and 2014**Revenue**

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
Licensing revenue	\$ 21,611	\$ 18,394
Dollar change from prior year	3,217	
Percent change from prior year	17%	

Licensing revenue for the year ended December 31, 2015 was \$21.6 million, an increase of \$3.2 million, or 17%, compared to \$18.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2014. The increase reflects the impact of the recognition of \$3.9 million of licensing revenue for the three months ended March 31, 2015 and the recognition of the remaining deferred revenue balance of \$43.1 million during the three months ended June 30, 2015 and as a result of the Termination Agreement with AstraZeneca. This recognition of deferred revenue was primarily offset by an aggregate of \$25.0 million in payments made to AstraZeneca in connection with the Termination Agreement.

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
Collaborative development revenue	\$ 2,415	\$ 13,229
Dollar change from prior year	(10,814)	
Percent change from prior year	-82%	

Collaborative development revenue consists of our development expenses that were reimbursable to us by AstraZeneca as part of our license agreement. Collaborative development revenue for the year ended December 31, 2015 was \$2.4 million, a decrease of \$10.8 million, or 82%, compared to \$13.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2014. The decrease was due to the reduction in the development activities that we performed for tenapanor in the first half of 2015, and due to the Termination Agreement with AstraZeneca.

Research and Development

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
Research and development	\$ 39,885	\$ 25,900
Dollar change from prior year	13,985	
Percent change from prior year	54%	

[Table of Contents](#)

Research and development expenses were \$39.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2015, an increase of \$14.0 million, or 54%, compared to \$25.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2014. The change was primarily due to the \$7.3 million in expenses incurred for the tenapanor clinical trial material from AstraZeneca as well as an increase of \$6.7 million in expenses incurred for clinical development activities associated with tenapanor and RDX7675, and manufacturing process development for RDX7675.

General and Administrative

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
General and administrative	\$ 13,530	\$ 7,287
Dollar change from prior year	6,243	
Percent change from prior year	86%	

General and administrative expenses were \$13.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2015, an increase of \$6.2 million, or 86%, compared to \$7.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2014. The increase was primarily due to an increase in professional services fees, personnel and public company operational costs.

Change in Fair Value of Preferred Stock Warrant Liability

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2015	2014
	(in thousands)	
Change in Fair Value of Preferred Stock Warrant Liability	\$ —	\$ (1,593)
Dollar change from prior year	1,593	
Percent change from prior year	-100%	

Change in fair value of preferred stock warrant liability was zero for the year ended December 31, 2015 compared to \$(1.6) million for the year ended December 31, 2014. The preferred stock warrants were net exercised upon the completion of our IPO in June 2014 and were no longer subject to remeasurement.

LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 74,598	\$ 107,004
Short-term investments	126,225	—
	<u>\$ 200,823</u>	<u>\$ 107,004</u>

As of December 31, 2016, we had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments totaling \$200.8 million.

On July 13, 2015, we filed a shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-205631) with the SEC, under which we may sell an aggregate of up to \$200.0 million of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, warrants, purchase contracts and/or units. The S-3 shelf registration statement included a prospectus covering the offering, issuance and sale of up to \$50.0 million of shares of common stock from time to time in “at the market,” or “ATM offerings” pursuant to a Controlled Equity Offering Sales Agreement, or Sales Agreement, entered into with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. on July 13, 2015. No shares of common stock have been sold to date in ATM offerings, and on February 6, 2017 we gave notice to Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. of our termination of the Sales Agreement, effective February 16, 2017.

[Table of Contents](#)

In January 2016, we completed an underwritten public offering of 8,625,000 shares of common stock at an offering price of \$10.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$86.3 million. This offering was completed under our shelf registration statement filed on July 13, 2015, and we received net proceeds from the offering of approximately \$80.8 million, after deducting the underwriters' discounts and commissions and offering expenses.

In July 2016, we sold and issued an aggregate of 12,600,230 shares of common stock in a private placement transaction at an offering price of \$8.73 per share for gross proceeds of \$110.0 million. We received net proceeds from the offering of approximately \$109.8 million, after deducting offering expenses.

Our primary uses of cash are to fund operating expenses, primarily research and development expenditures. Cash used to fund operating expenses is impacted by the timing of when we pay these expenses, as reflected in the change in our outstanding accounts payable and accrued expenses.

We believe that our existing capital resources as of December 31, 2016 will be sufficient to meet our projected operating requirements for at least the next 12 months. We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could utilize our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. Further, our operating plan can change, and we will require significant additional capital to fund our operations, including to support the development, pre-commercialization and commercialization efforts for tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940. We may seek to obtain such additional capital through debt financings, credit facilities, additional equity offerings and/or strategic collaborations. We currently have no credit facility or committed sources of capital, and there can be no assurances that such sources of capital will be available to us when needed or on acceptable terms. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of our product candidates, and the extent to which we may enter into additional collaboration partnerships with third parties to participate in their development and commercialization, we are unable to estimate the amounts of increased capital outlays and operating expenditures associated with our current and anticipated clinical studies. Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including the following:

- the progress, timing, scope, results and costs of our clinical trial programs evaluating tenapanor in IBS-C and for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in patients with ESRD on dialysis, as well as our decision whether or not to pursue other indications for tenapanor;
- the progress, timing, scope, results and costs of our clinical programs for RDX7675 and RDX8940;
- the time and cost necessary to obtain regulatory approvals for our product candidates and the costs of post-marketing studies that could be required by regulatory authorities;
- our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates, either alone or with one or more collaboration partners;
- the manufacturing costs of our product candidates, and the availability of one or more suppliers for our product candidates at reasonable costs, both for clinical and commercial supply;
- the selling and marketing costs associated with our product candidates, including the cost and timing of building our sales and marketing capabilities;
- our ability to establish and maintain collaboration partnerships to in-license or out-license our current programs or other similar arrangements and the financial terms of such agreements;
- the timing, receipt, and amount of sales of, or royalties on, our future products, if any;
- the sales price and the availability of adequate third-party reimbursement for our product candidates;
- the cash requirements of any future acquisitions or discovery of product candidates;
- the number and scope of research programs that we decide to pursue or initiate, and any clinical trials we decide to pursue for other product candidates;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the time and cost necessary to respond to technological and market developments; and
- the costs of filing, prosecuting, maintaining, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights, including litigation costs and the outcome of such litigation, including costs of defending any claims of infringement brought by others in connection with the development, manufacture or commercialization of our product candidates.

The following table summarizes our cash flows for the periods indicated (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Cash (used in) provided by operating activities	\$ (92,534)	\$ (71,840)	\$ 13,397
Cash used in investing activities	(131,076)	(3,454)	(1,856)
Cash provided by financing activities	191,204	75,012	61,310
Net decrease in cash and cash equivalents	\$ (32,406)	\$ (282)	\$ 72,851

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2016 was approximately \$92.5 million. The net loss of \$112.4 million was adjusted for (i) an increase of accounts payable and accrued liabilities of \$11.2 million primarily due to expenses incurred for the clinical manufacturing, process development, and clinical development activities for tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940, (ii) non-cash charges of \$1.8 million for depreciation and amortization and \$5.3 million for stock-based compensation and (iii) pre-payments of \$1.6 million to vendors for clinical development and manufacturing activities.

Net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2015 was approximately \$71.8 million. The net loss of \$29.6 million was adjusted for (i) the recognition of deferred revenues of \$47.1 million related to upfront payments from AstraZeneca, (ii) an increase of accounts payable and accrued liabilities of \$2.3 million due to expenses incurred for the clinical manufacturing, process development, and clinical development activities for tenapanor, RDX7675 and RDX8940, (iii) non-cash charges of \$1.3 million for depreciation and amortization and \$2.6 million for stock-based compensation, (iv) advance payments of \$4.1 million to vendors for clinical development and manufacturing activities, and (v) an increase accounts receivable of \$2.6 million due to the termination of our collaboration with AstraZeneca.

Net cash provided by operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2014 was approximately \$13.4 million. The net loss of \$3.2 million was adjusted for (i) the increase in deferred revenues of \$6.8 million related to upfront payments from AstraZeneca, (ii) an increase of accounts payable and accrued liabilities of \$2.2 million due to expenses incurred for the clinical manufacturing, process development, and clinical development activities for tenapanor and RDX7675, (iii) non-cash charges of \$0.3 million for depreciation and amortization and \$1.7 million for stock-based compensation, (iv) advance payments of \$0.1 million to vendors for clinical development and manufacturing activities, and (v) an increase accounts receivable of \$3.9 million due to the termination of our collaboration with AstraZeneca.

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Net cash used by investing activities was \$131.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 and was primarily due to purchases of marketable securities of \$133.8 million and acquisition of property and equipment of \$4.9 million related to the expansion of our laboratory and related equipment. These uses of cash were partially offset by maturities of short-term investments of \$7.6 million.

Net cash used in investing activities for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 was related to our acquisition of property and equipment of \$3.5 million and \$1.9 million, respectively. Purchases of property and equipment are primarily related to expansion of our laboratory and related equipment.

[Table of Contents](#)

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Net cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2016 was \$191.2 million and was primarily due to net proceeds of \$190.6 million from public and private offerings of our common stock.

Net cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2015 was \$75.0 million and was primarily due to net proceeds of \$74.3 million from a private offering of our common stock.

Net cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2014 was \$61.3 million and was primarily due to net proceeds of \$61.2 million from a public offering of our common stock.

CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS AND OTHER COMMITMENTS

Contractual Obligation:	Payments Due by Period				Total
	Less than 1 year	1 to 3 Years	4 to 5 Years	More Than 5 Years	
Operating leases (1)	1,460	5,213	1,440	—	8,113
Total contractual obligations	<u>\$ 1,460</u>	<u>\$5,213</u>	<u>\$1,440</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$8,113</u>

(1) Operating leases include total future minimum rent payments under non-cancelable operating lease agreements.

OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS

As of December 31, 2016, we did not have any off-balance sheet arrangements as defined in Item 303(a)(4) of Regulation S-K as promulgated by the SEC.

RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS

For a discussion of new accounting pronouncements refer to **NOTE 2, SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**, to our financial statements appearing elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K

JOBS ACT ACCOUNTING ELECTION

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act. Under the JOBS Act, emerging growth companies can delay adopting new or revised accounting standards issued subsequent to the enactment of the JOBS Act until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards, and, therefore, are subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies. In addition, as an emerging growth company, we have reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

Interest Rate Risk

We are exposed to market risks in the ordinary course of our business. These risks primarily include risk related to interest rate sensitivities. We had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments of \$200.8 million as of December 31, 2016, which consist of bank deposits and money market funds, as well as high quality fixed income instruments including corporate bonds, commercial paper, and asset-backed securities collateralized by non-mortgage consumer receivables. The credit rating of our short term investments must be rated A-1/P-1, or

[Table of Contents](#)

better by Standard and Poor's and Moody's Investors Service. The credit rating of our long-term securities must be rated at least A- by Standard & Poor's or A3 by Moody's. Asset-backed securities must be rated AAA/Aaa. Money Market funds must be rated AAAM/Aaa. Such interest-earning instruments carry a degree of interest rate risk. However, because our investments are high quality and primarily short-term in duration, we believe that our exposure to interest rate risk is not significant and a 10% movement in market interest rates would not have a significant impact on the total value of our portfolio. We do not enter into investments for trading or speculative purposes.

Foreign Currency Exchange Risk

Certain expenses related to our international activities are payable in foreign currencies. As a result, factors such as changes in foreign currency exchange rates or weak economic conditions in foreign markets will affect our financial results. We recognized net foreign exchange transaction losses of \$0.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. For most contracts payable in a foreign currency, we have generally purchased the total expected payable amount of foreign currency at the execution of the contract and currently do not hedge foreign currency exchange rate exposure. Although the impact of currency fluctuations on our financial results has been immaterial in the past, there can be no guarantee the impact of currency fluctuations related to our international activities will not be material in the future.

[Table of Contents](#)

ITEM 8. CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

ARDELYX, INC.

INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	78
Audited Financial Statements	
Consolidated Balance Sheets	79
Consolidated Statements of Operations	80
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss	81
Consolidated Statements of Convertible Preferred Stock and Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)	82
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	83
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	84

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The Board of Directors and Stockholders Ardelyx, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Ardelyx, Inc. (the Company) as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, convertible preferred stock and stockholders' equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2016. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. We were not engaged to perform an audit of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Our audits included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of Ardelyx, Inc. at December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the consolidated results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2016, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Redwood City, California
February 17, 2017

[Table of Contents](#)

ARDELYX, INC.
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 74,598	\$ 107,004
Short-term investments	126,225	—
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	3,169	5,027
Total current assets	203,992	112,031
Property and equipment, net	8,991	4,711
Other assets	148	104
Restricted cash	—	100
Total assets	<u>\$ 213,131</u>	<u>\$ 116,946</u>
Liabilities and stockholders' equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 5,635	\$ 2,777
Accrued compensation and benefits	3,161	2,366
Accrued and other liabilities	10,405	2,580
Total current liabilities	19,201	7,723
Other long-term liabilities	779	322
Total liabilities	19,980	8,045
Commitments and contingencies (Note 14)		
Stockholders' equity:		
Preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value; 5,000,000 shares authorized as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively; no shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively.	—	—
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value; 300,000,000 shares authorized as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively; 47,309,422 and 25,964,886 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively.	5	3
Additional paid-in capital	407,092	210,386
Accumulated deficit	(213,875)	(101,488)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(71)	—
Total stockholders' equity	193,151	108,901
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	<u>\$ 213,131</u>	<u>\$ 116,946</u>

See accompanying notes.

ARDELYX, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)		
Revenue:			
Licensing revenue	\$ —	\$ 21,611	\$ 18,394
Collaborative development revenue	—	2,415	13,229
Total revenue	—	24,026	31,623
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	94,161	39,885	25,900
General and administrative	18,734	13,530	7,287
Total operating expenses	112,895	53,415	33,187
Loss from operations	(112,895)	(29,389)	(1,564)
Other income (expense), net	508	(261)	10
Change in fair value of preferred stock warrant liability	—	—	(1,593)
Loss before provision for income taxes	(112,387)	(29,650)	(3,147)
Benefit from (Provision for) income taxes	—	29	(67)
Net loss	\$ (112,387)	\$ (29,621)	\$ (3,214)
Net loss per common share, basic and diluted	\$ (2.80)	\$ (1.29)	\$ (0.31)
Weighted-average number of common shares used in net loss per share, basic and diluted	40,118,522	22,892,640	10,248,337

See accompanying notes.

ARDELYX, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Net loss	\$(112,387)	\$(29,621)	\$(3,214)
Unrealized loss on available-for-sale securities, net of tax	(71)	—	—
Comprehensive loss	<u>\$(112,458)</u>	<u>\$(29,621)</u>	<u>\$(3,214)</u>

See accompanying notes.

ARDELYX, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)
(in thousands, except share amounts)

	Convertible Preferred Stock		Common Stock				Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	Total Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit		
Balance as of December 31, 2013	11,517,222	\$ 56,155	1,225,481	\$ —	\$ 5,174	\$ (68,653)	\$ —	\$ (63,479)
Conversion of convertible preferred stock to common stock in connection with initial public offering	(11,517,222)	(56,155)	11,517,222	1	56,154	—	—	56,155
Net exercise and conversion of preferred stock warrants to common stock in connection with initial public offering	—	—	571,244	—	8,049	—	—	8,049
Issuance of common stock in connection with initial public offering, net of offering costs	—	—	4,928,900	1	61,240	—	—	61,241
Exercise of stock options and vesting of early exercised stock options, net of repurchases	—	—	336,398	—	238	—	—	238
Issuance of common stock for services	—	—	10,000	—	208	—	—	208
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	1,484	—	—	1,484
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	(3,214)	—	(3,214)
Balance as of December 31, 2014	—	\$ —	18,589,245	\$ 2	\$ 132,547	\$ (71,867)	\$ —	\$ 60,682
Issuance of common stock and warrants in connection with the private placement, net of expenses of \$3,449	—	—	7,242,992	1	74,322	—	—	74,323
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options	—	—	77,784	—	111	—	—	111
Issuance of common stock under employee stock purchase plan	—	—	41,580	—	548	—	—	548
Issuance of common stock for services	—	—	13,285	—	194	—	—	194
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	2,634	—	—	2,634
Other	—	—	—	—	30	—	—	30
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	(29,621)	—	(29,621)
Balance as of December 31, 2015	—	\$ —	25,964,886	\$ 3	\$ 210,386	\$ (101,488)	\$ —	\$ 108,901
Issuance of common stock in connection with PIPE, net of expenses of \$263	—	—	12,600,230	1	109,735	—	—	109,736
Issuance of common stock in connection with public offering, net of expenses of \$5,413	—	—	8,625,000	1	80,836	—	—	80,837
Issuance of common stock under employee stock purchase plan	—	—	69,054	—	576	—	—	576
Issuance of common stock for services	—	—	20,118	—	187	—	—	187
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options	—	—	25,134	—	55	—	—	55
Issuance of common stock in conjunction with vesting of restricted stock units	—	—	5,000	—	—	—	—	—
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	—	5,317	—	—	5,317
Other comprehensive loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(71)	(71)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	(112,387)	—	(112,387)
Balance as of December 31, 2016	—	\$ —	47,309,422	\$ 5	\$ 407,092	\$ (213,875)	\$ (71)	\$ 193,151

See accompanying notes.

ARDELYX, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(in thousands)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Operating activities			
Net loss	\$(112,387)	\$ (29,621)	\$ (3,214)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:			
Depreciation expense	1,295	829	302
Amortization of deferred financing costs	346	351	—
Amortization of deferred compensation for services	194	107	—
Amortization of premium on investment securities	(86)		—
Stock-based compensation	5,317	2,634	1,692
Change in fair value of preferred stock warrant liability	—	—	1,593
Loss from disposal of fixed assets	—	65	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	—	2,584	3,852
Prepaid expenses and other assets	1,562	(4,083)	96
Accounts payable	2,148	(371)	831
Accrued compensation and benefits	795	718	721
Accrued and other liabilities	8,282	2,000	647
Deferred revenue	—	(47,053)	6,755
Other long-term liabilities	—	—	122
Net cash (used in) provided by operating activities	<u>(92,534)</u>	<u>(71,840)</u>	<u>13,397</u>
Investing activities			
Purchases of short-term investments	(133,810)	—	—
Proceeds from maturities of short-term investments	7,600	—	—
Purchases of property and equipment	(4,866)	(3,454)	(1,856)
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(131,076)</u>	<u>(3,454)</u>	<u>(1,856)</u>
Financing activities			
Proceeds from issuance of common stock, net of issuance costs	190,573	74,323	61,241
Proceeds from issuance of common stock under stock plans	631	659	71
Other	—	30	(2)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	<u>191,204</u>	<u>75,012</u>	<u>61,310</u>
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	<u>(32,406)</u>	<u>(282)</u>	<u>72,851</u>
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	<u>107,004</u>	<u>107,286</u>	<u>34,435</u>
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	<u>\$ 74,598</u>	<u>\$ 107,004</u>	<u>\$ 107,286</u>
Supplementary disclosure of cash flow information			
Income taxes paid	\$ —	\$ 69	\$ —
Supplementary disclosure of non-cash financing information:			
Acquisition of property and equipment included in accounts payable and accrued liabilities	\$ 730	\$ —	\$ —
Services settled through the issuance of common stock	\$ 187	\$ —	\$ 208
Reclassification of convertible preferred warrant liability to additional paid-in capital	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 8,049
Conversion of convertible preferred stock to common stock at closing of initial public offering	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 56,155

See accompanying notes.

ARDELYX, INC.
NOTES CONSOLIDATED TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

1. ORGANIZATION AND BASIS OF PRESENTATION

The Company is focused on enhancing the way patients with cardiorenal and gastrointestinal, or GI, diseases are treated by using the gut as the gateway to delivering medicines that matter. The Company has pioneered the development of small molecule therapeutics that act predominantly in the GI tract, thereby avoiding potentially negative side effects on the rest of the body. The Company's strategy is to evolve from R&D-focused to an integrated biotech company, by building cardiorenal and GI businesses in the United States, while exploring a variety of strategic commercial options outside the United States. The Company is developing several products and programs focused on underserved medical needs including the following:

Cardiorenal Portfolio

- Tenapanor: Phase 3 clinical development for treatment of ESRD patients on dialysis suffering from elevated phosphate, or hyperphosphatemia
- RDX7675: Phase 3 clinical development for the treatment of patients with hyperkalemia, common in patients with CKD and/or heart failure
- Research Programs: the Company is evaluating small-molecule approaches to treat hyperkalemia in order to significantly reduce pill burden as well as leveraging its knowledge of phosphorus absorption to discover improved approaches.

Gastrointestinal Portfolio

- Tenapanor: Phase 3 clinical development for treatment of IBS-C patients
- RDX8940: IND filed in late 2016 to begin clinical studies.
- Research Programs: The Company is leveraging our knowledge of the mechanisms of tenapanor in order to discover new agents that modulate transport of ions and other processes in the gut.

The Company operates in only one business segment, which is the development of biopharmaceutical products.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Ardelyx and its wholly-owned subsidiary, Ardelyx Cayman Islands, and have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ("US GAAP"). Intercompany transactions and balances have been eliminated in consolidation.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with US GAAP requires management to make estimates and judgments that affect the amounts reported in the consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. On an ongoing basis, management evaluates its estimates, including those related to revenue, clinical trial accruals, contract manufacturing accruals, fair value of assets and liabilities, income taxes, and stock-based compensation. Management bases its estimates on historical experience and on various other market-specific and relevant assumptions that management believes to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

[Table of Contents](#)

Liquidity

The Company has never been profitable on an annual basis and, as of December 31, 2016, the Company has an accumulated deficit of \$213.9 million. The Company has incurred net losses of approximately \$112.4 million, \$29.6 million and \$3.2 million in the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The Company expects to continue to incur net operating losses for the foreseeable future, as the Company continues the development of, seeks regulatory approval for, and if approved, begins to commercialize, tenapanor and RDX7675. The Company will need additional funding to support its future operating activities and adequate funding may not be available to the Company on acceptable terms, or at all. The Company's failure to obtain sufficient funds on acceptable terms when needed could have a material adverse effect on the business, results of operations, and financial condition. The Company will need to generate significant revenues to achieve profitability and may never do so.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid investments purchased with an original maturity date of 90 days or less on the date of purchase to be cash equivalents.

Short-Term Investments

Short-term investments consist of debt securities classified as available-for-sale and have maturities greater than 90 days, but less than 365 days from the date of acquisition. Short-term investments are carried at fair value based upon quoted market prices. Unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities are excluded from earnings and are reported as a component of accumulated other comprehensive loss. The cost of available-for-sale securities sold is based on the specific-identification method.

Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to significant concentrations of credit risk consist primarily of cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments. The Company is exposed to credit risks in the event of default by the issuers to the extent of the amount recorded in its Consolidated Balance Sheets. Cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments are invested through banks and other financial institutions in the United States.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are stated at cost, less accumulated depreciation and amortization. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the respective assets, generally three to five years. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the lesser of the estimated useful lives or the related remaining lease term.

Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

The carrying value of long-lived assets, including property and equipment, are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the asset may not be recoverable. An impairment loss is recognized when the total of estimated future undiscounted cash flows, expected to result from the use of the asset and its eventual disposition, are less than its carrying amount. Impairment, if any, would be assessed using discounted cash flows or other appropriate measures of fair value. Through December 31, 2016, there have been no such impairment losses.

Income Taxes

The Company uses the asset and liability method of accounting for income taxes. Under this method, deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined based on the differences between the financial reporting and the

[Table of Contents](#)

tax bases of assets and liabilities and are measured using the enacted tax rates and laws that will be in effect when the differences are expected to reverse. A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that some portion or all of a deferred tax asset will not be realized.

Revenue Recognition

Revenue from research activities made under collaboration partnership agreements are recognized as the services are provided and when there is persuasive evidence that an arrangement exists, delivery has occurred, the price is fixed or determinable, and collectability is reasonably assured. Revenue generated from research and licensing agreements typically includes up-front signing or license fees, cost reimbursements, research services, minimum sublicense fees, milestone payments, and royalties on future licensees' product sales.

For revenue agreements with multiple-element arrangements, such as license and development agreements, the Company allocates revenue to each unit of accounting based on the relative selling price of each unit. When applying the relative selling price method, the Company determines the selling price for each deliverable using vendor-specific objective evidence or third-party evidence. If neither exists, the Company uses its best estimate of selling price for that deliverable. Revenue allocated is then recognized when the four basic revenue recognition criteria are met for each deliverable.

The Company recognizes revenue from upfront payments ratably over the term of its estimated period of performance under the agreement which is recorded as licensing revenue. Reimbursements for development costs incurred under the Company's license agreement with AstraZeneca are classified as collaborative development revenue. The Company recognizes cost reimbursement revenue under collaboration partnership agreements as the related research and development costs for services are rendered. Deferred revenue represents the portion of research or license payments received which has not been earned.

Revenues from milestones, if they are nonrefundable and deemed substantive, are recognized upon successful accomplishment of the milestones. To the extent that non-substantive milestones are achieved and the Company has remaining performance obligations, milestones are deferred and recognized as revenue over the estimated remaining period of performance. The Company will recognize revenue associated with the non-substantive milestones upon achievement of the milestone if there are no undelivered units and it has no remaining performance obligations. The Company will account for sales-based milestones as royalties that will be recognized as revenue upon achievement of the milestone.

Research and Development Costs

Research and development costs are charged to expense as incurred and consist of costs incurred to further the Company's research and development activities including salaries and related employee benefits, costs associated with clinical trials, costs related to pre-commercialization manufacturing activities such as manufacturing process validation activities and the manufacturing of clinical drug supply, nonclinical research and development activities, regulatory activities, research-related overhead expenses and fees paid to external service providers and contract research and manufacturing organizations that conduct certain research and development activities on behalf of the Company.

Accrued Research and Development Expenses

As part of the process of preparing our financial statements, the Company is required to estimate its accrued expenses. This process involves reviewing open contracts and purchase orders, communicating with its personnel to identify services that have been performed on its behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred for the service when the Company has not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of the actual cost. The majority of the Company's service providers invoice its monthly invoices in arrears for services performed or when contractual milestones are met. The Company makes estimates of its accrued expenses as of

[Table of Contents](#)

each balance sheet date in its financial statements based on facts and circumstances known to the Company at that time. The Company periodically confirms the accuracy of its estimates with the service providers and make adjustments if necessary. Examples of estimated accrued research and development expenses include fees paid to:

- CROs in connection with clinical studies;
- investigative sites in connection with clinical studies;
- vendors related to product manufacturing, development and distribution of clinical supplies;
- collaborator entities in connection with our collaboration agreements; and
- vendors in connection with preclinical development activities.

The Company records expenses related to clinical studies and manufacturing development activities based on its estimates of the services received and efforts expended pursuant to contracts with multiple CROs and manufacturing vendors that conduct and manage these activities on its behalf. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation, vary from contract to contract, and may result in uneven payment flows. There may be instances in which payments made to the Company's vendors will exceed the level of services provided and result in a prepayment of the expense. Payments under some of these contracts depend on factors such as the successful enrollment of subjects and the completion of clinical trial milestones. In accruing service fees, the Company estimates the time period over which services will be performed, enrollment of subjects, number of sites activated and the level of effort to be expended in each period. If the actual timing of the performance of services or the level of effort varies from the Company's estimate, the Company will adjust the accrued or prepaid expense balance accordingly. To date, there have been no material differences from the Company's estimates to the amounts actually incurred.

Stock-Based Compensation

The Company recognizes compensation expense for all share-based payment awards made to employees and directors based on estimated fair values. For employee stock options, the Company determines the grant date fair value of the awards using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model and generally recognizes the fair value as stock-based compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the vesting period of the respective awards. Stock-based compensation expense is based on the value of the portion of stock-based payment awards that is ultimately expected to vest. As such, the Company's stock-based compensation is reduced for the estimated forfeitures at the date of grant and revised, if necessary, in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates. For restricted stock, the compensation cost for these awards is based on the closing price of the Company's common stock on the date of grant and recognized as compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period.

The Company accounts for equity instruments issued to nonemployees based on their fair values on the measurement dates using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The estimated fair values of the options granted to nonemployees are remeasured as they vest. As a result, the noncash charge to operations for nonemployee options with vesting conditions is affected each reporting period by changes in the fair value of the Company's common stock.

Convertible Preferred Stock Warrant Liability

The Company accounted for freestanding warrants to purchase shares of convertible preferred stock that were contingently redeemable as liabilities in the balance sheets at their estimated fair value. Convertible preferred stock warrants were subject to remeasurement at each balance sheet date, and any change in fair value was recognized as a component of other expense, net in the statements of operations and comprehensive loss.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company continued to adjust the carrying value of the warrants until the closing of its initial public offering (IPO), at which time the warrants were net exercised for shares of the Company's common stock and the liability was reclassified to stockholders' equity (deficit).

Comprehensive Loss

Comprehensive loss is composed of two components: net loss and other comprehensive loss. Other comprehensive loss refers to gains and losses that under GAAP are recorded as an element of stockholders' equity (deficit), but are excluded from net loss.

Net Loss per Share

Basic net loss per common share is calculated by dividing the net loss by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period, without consideration of common stock equivalents. Diluted net loss per common share in the periods presented is the same as basic net loss per common share, since the effects of potentially dilutive securities are antidilutive.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In May, 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* ("ASU 2014-09"), which requires an entity to recognize the amount of revenue to which it expects to be entitled for the transfer of promised goods or services to customers. ASU 2014-09 will replace most existing revenue recognition guidance in U.S. GAAP when it becomes effective. In July 2015, the FASB voted to approve a deferral of the effective date of this ASU by one year, and to permit entities to adopt up to one year earlier if they choose. Therefore, the new standard will become effective for the Company on January 1, 2018 and early application is permitted for periods beginning on or after January 1, 2017. The standard permits the use of either the retrospective or cumulative effect transition method. Since the issuance of ASU 2014-09, the FASB has issued several amendments which clarify certain points in the new Topic 606 - *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*, including ASU 2016-08 ("Principal versus Agent Considerations—Reporting Revenue Gross versus Net"), ASU 2016-10 ("Identifying Performance Obligations and Licensing"), ASU 2016-11 ("Rescission of SEC Guidance Because of Accounting Standards Updates 2014-09 and 2014-16 Pursuant to Staff Announcements at the March 3, 2016 EITF Meeting") and ASU 2016-12 ("Narrow-Scope Improvements and Practical Expedients"). The Company plans to adopt all these standards on January 1, 2018. The Company plans to modify its accounting policies to reflect the requirements of these standards and plans to select the modified retrospective transition method. The Company did not recognize revenue for the year ended December 31, 2016, and therefore, the planned adoption of this standard will not affect the Company's consolidated financial statements and related disclosures for these periods or future periods until the Company reports revenues.

In August 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-15, *Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern: Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* ("ASU 2014-15"). ASU 2014-15 is intended to define management's responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about an organization's ability to continue as a going concern and to provide related footnote disclosures, if required. The Company adopted ASU 2014-15 for the year ended December 31, 2016 and this ASU applies to all future annual and interim reporting periods. The adoption of ASU 2014-15 did not have a material effect on the Company's consolidated financial statements and related disclosures, although it could have an impact on disclosures in future periods.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*. Under the new guidance, lessees will be required to recognize a lease liability and a right-of-use asset for all leases (with the exception of short term leases) at the commencement date. Lessor accounting under ASU 2016-02 is largely unchanged. ASU 2016-02 is effective for annual and interim periods beginning on or after December 15, 2018 and early adoption

[Table of Contents](#)

is permitted. Under ASU 2016-02, lessees (for capital and operating leases) and lessors (for sales-type, direct financing, and operating leases) must apply a modified retrospective transition approach for leases existing at, or entered into after, the beginning of the earliest comparative period presented in the financial statements. Lessees and lessors may not apply a full retrospective transition approach. The Company has not yet selected an implementation date nor has it determined the effect of the standard on the Company's ongoing financial reporting.

In March 2016, the FASB issued Accounting Standards 2016-09, *Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, which amends ASC Topic 718, Stock Compensation. The objective of this amendment is part of the FASB's Simplification Initiative as it applies to several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. The Company elected early adoption of ASU 2016-09 in the in the fourth quarter of 2016 which required us to reflect any adjustments as of January 1, 2016. Upon adoption, excess tax benefits or deficiencies from share-based award activity are reflected in the consolidated statements of operations as a component of the provision for income taxes, whereas they previously were recognized in equity. The adoption resulted in approximately \$0.8 million income tax benefit recognized, before full valuation allowance, as of December 31, 2016. The previously unrecognized excess tax benefit of approximately \$0.7 million as of January 1, 2016 was recorded as an increase to deferred tax asset with the corresponding increase to valuation allowance and no impact to the beginning retained earnings. The Company did not change its policy with respect to the treatment of forfeitures; and, the Company continues estimating the number of forfeitures. As such, this has no cumulative effect on retained earnings upon adoption. With the early adoption of 2016-09, the Company has elected to present the cash flow statement on a prospective transition method where no prior periods have been adjusted.

In August 2016, the FASB issued Accounting Standards Update (ASU) 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments*, which provides additional guidance on the presentation and classification of certain items in the statement of cash flows. The amendments are effective for public business entities for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted and the standard shall be applied retrospectively. The adoption of ASU 2016-15 is not expected to have a material effect on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-18, *Restricted Cash*, which requires amounts generally described as restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents be included with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling the total beginning and ending amounts for the periods shown on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-08 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018 (including interim periods within those periods) using a retrospective transition method to each period presented. The adoption of ASU 2016-18 is not expected to have a material effect on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

The Company has reviewed all other significant newly-issued accounting pronouncements and concluded that they either are not applicable to the Company's operations or that no material effect is expected on its consolidated financial statements as a result of future adoption.

[Table of Contents](#)

3. CASH, CASH EQUIVALENTS AND INVESTMENTS

Securities classified as cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015 are summarized below (in thousands). Estimated fair value is based on quoted market prices for these investments.

	December 31, 2016			
	Amortized Cost	Gross Unrealized		Fair Value
		Gains	Losses	
Cash and cash equivalents:				
Cash	\$ 3,638	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 3,638
Money market funds	68,561	—	—	68,561
Commercial paper	2,399	—	—	2,399
Total cash and cash equivalents	<u>\$ 74,598</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 74,598</u>
Short-term investments				
Corporate bonds	58,464	2	(56)	\$ 58,410
Commercial paper	62,946	5	(20)	62,931
Asset-backed securities	4,886	—	(2)	4,884
Total short-term investments	<u>\$126,296</u>	<u>\$ 7</u>	<u>\$ (78)</u>	<u>\$126,225</u>
Total	<u><u>\$200,894</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 7</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (78)</u></u>	<u><u>\$200,823</u></u>

	December 31, 2015			
	Amortized Cost	Gross Unrealized		Fair Value
		Gains	Losses	
Cash and cash equivalents:				
Cash	\$ 25,194	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 25,194
Money market funds	81,810	—	—	81,810
Total cash and cash equivalents	<u>\$107,004</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$107,004</u>

During the three months ended December 31, 2016, the Company determined that one of its bank accounts comprising \$24.0 million at December 31, 2015 should have been classified as cash rather than as money market funds. Accordingly, the impact of this reclassification has been reflected in the table for December 31, 2015 presented above. The Company made a similar reclassification in **NOTE 4, FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS**. This change in classification does not affect previously reported financial statements for any period.

Cash equivalents consist of money market funds and corporate debt securities with original maturities of three months or less at the time of purchase, and the carrying amount is a reasonable approximation of fair value. The Company invests its cash in high quality securities of financial and commercial institutions. These securities are carried at fair value, which is based on readily available market information, with unrealized gains and losses included in "accumulated other comprehensive loss" within stockholders' equity on the Company's consolidated balance sheets. The Company uses the specific identification method to determine the amount of realized gains or losses on sales of marketable securities. For the year ended December 31, 2016, there were no realized gains or losses on the available-for-sale securities.

All available-for-sale securities held as of December 31, 2016 had contractual maturities of less than one year. Investments that have maturities beyond one year as of the end of the reporting period are classified as non-current. The Company's available-for-sale securities are subject to a periodic impairment review. The Company considers a debt security to be impaired when its fair value is less than its carrying cost, in which case the Company would further review the investment to determine whether it is other-than-temporarily impaired. When the Company evaluates an investment for other-than-temporary impairment, the Company reviews factors such as the length of time and extent to which fair value has been below cost basis, the financial condition of the issuer and any changes thereto, intent to sell, and whether it is more likely than not the Company will be required to sell the investment before the recovery of its

[Table of Contents](#)

cost basis. If an investment is other-than-temporarily impaired, the Company writes it down through the statement of operations to its fair value and establishes that value as a new cost basis for the investment. The Company did not identify any of its available-for-sale securities as other-than-temporarily impaired in any of the periods presented. As of December 31, 2016, no investment was in a continuous unrealized loss position for more than one year, the unrealized losses were not due to a change in credit risk and the Company believes that is more likely than not the investments will be held until maturity or a forecasted recovery of fair value.

4. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS

Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Valuation techniques used to measure fair value must maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs.

The three-level hierarchy for the inputs to valuation techniques is briefly summarized as follows:

- Level 1 – Valuations are based on quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities. Examples of assets and liabilities utilizing Level 1 inputs are certain money market funds, U.S. Treasuries and trading securities with quoted prices on active markets.
- Level 2 – Valuations based on inputs other than the quoted prices in active markets that are observable either directly or indirectly in active markets. Examples of assets and liabilities utilizing Level 2 inputs are U.S. government agency bonds, corporate bonds, commercial paper, certificates of deposit and over-the-counter derivatives.
- Level 3 – Valuations based on unobservable inputs in which there is little or no market data, which require us to develop our own assumptions.

The following table sets forth the fair value of the Company's financial assets measured on a recurring basis by level within the fair value hierarchy:

	December 31, 2016			
	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Assets:				
Money market funds	\$ 68,561	\$68,561	\$ —	\$ —
Corporate bonds	58,410	—	58,410	—
Commercial paper	65,330	—	65,330	—
Asset-backed securities	4,884	—	4,884	—
Total	<u>\$197,185</u>	<u>\$68,561</u>	<u>\$128,624</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
	December 31, 2015			
	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Assets:				
Money market funds	\$ 81,810	\$81,810	\$ —	\$ —
Certificates of deposit	100	—	100	—
Total	<u>\$ 81,910</u>	<u>\$81,810</u>	<u>\$ 100</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

Where quoted prices are available in an active market, securities are classified as Level 1. The Company classifies money market funds as Level 1. When quoted market prices are not available for the specific security, then the Company estimates fair value by using benchmark yields, reported trades, broker/dealer quotes, and issuer spreads. The Company classifies certificates of deposit as Level 2. In certain cases, where there is limited activity or less transparency around inputs to valuation, securities are classified as Level 3. There were no transfers between Level 1 and Level 2 during the periods presented.

[Table of Contents](#)

The carrying amounts reflected in the balance sheets for cash equivalents, other receivables, prepaid expenses and other current assets, accounts payable and accrued expenses approximate their fair values at both December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, due to their short-term nature.

5. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Property and equipment consist of the following:

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(in thousands)	
Laboratory equipment	\$ 5,487	\$ 4,471
Office equipment and furniture	824	134
Leasehold improvements	7,783	3,914
Property and equipment, gross	14,094	8,519
Less: accumulated depreciation	(5,103)	(3,808)
Total property and equipment, net	<u>\$ 8,991</u>	<u>\$ 4,711</u>

Depreciation expense totaled \$1.3 million, \$0.8 million and \$0.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014.

6. ACCRUED AND OTHER LIABILITIES

Accrued liabilities and other liabilities consist of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
Accrued clinical trial expenses	\$ 6,694	\$ 311
Accrued contract manufacturing	2,705	289
Accrued professional and consulting services	322	272
AstraZeneca clinical trial material accrual	—	1,328
Other	684	380
	<u>\$10,405</u>	<u>\$2,580</u>

7. COLLABORATION AND LICENSING AGREEMENTS

AstraZeneca AB (“AstraZeneca”)

In October 2012, the Company entered into a collaboration partnership with AstraZeneca for the worldwide development and commercialization of tenapanor. Under the terms of the AstraZeneca collaboration partnership agreement, or the AstraZeneca Agreement, the Company received an aggregate of \$75 million in up-front license and milestone fees. The amounts were recorded as deferred revenue when received and were recognized as revenue on a straight-line basis over the remaining estimated period of performance under the AstraZeneca Agreement.

In June 2015, the Company entered into a termination agreement with AstraZeneca (the “Termination Agreement”) pursuant to which all licenses granted to AstraZeneca to the Company’s portfolio of NHE3 inhibitors, including the Company’s lead product candidate, tenapanor, were terminated, except for the limited purpose of allowing AstraZeneca to satisfy its obligations under the Termination Agreement. As the AstraZeneca Agreement was terminated in June 2015, the Company recognized the remaining deferred revenue balance of \$43.1 million during the three months ended June 30, 2015. In the three months ended June 30, 2015, the

[Table of Contents](#)

Company recorded a \$15.0 million payment for the return of the licenses as well as a \$10.0 million payment for reimbursement of research and development expenses and the acceleration of the transfer of information and materials as a reduction in licensing revenue in the consolidated statements of operations. There has been no recognition of licensing revenue or collaborative development revenue since the termination of the AstraZeneca agreement in 2015.

Sanofi SA (“Sanofi”)

In February 2014, the Company entered into a license option and license agreement with Sanofi (the “Sanofi Agreement”) for its phosphate transport NaP2b inhibitor program. Under the terms of the Sanofi Agreement, the Company granted Sanofi an exclusive worldwide license to conduct research utilizing the Company’s small molecule NaP2b inhibitors. In addition, Sanofi had the option to obtain an exclusive license to develop, manufacture and commercialize potential products under the agreement. Under the Sanofi Agreement, the Company received a payment of \$1.25 million in March 2014, which was fully recognized as licensing revenue in May 2014 after the Company completed its obligation to provide to Sanofi the background know-how, listed patents, and materials described in the Sanofi Agreement.

The Sanofi Agreement was terminated effective September 30, 2015 and all rights were returned to the Company. There was no payment associated with termination and the return of rights to the Company.

8. CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK

On June 24, 2014, prior to the closing of the IPO, all outstanding shares of convertible preferred stock converted into 11,517,222 shares of common stock with the related carrying value of \$56.2 million reclassified to common stock and additional paid-in capital.

9. PREFERRED STOCK WARRANTS

In connection with the closing of the Series B financing in August 2011, the Company issued warrants for the purchase of 574,953 shares of Series B convertible preferred stock. The exercise price of the warrants was \$0.09 per share. The preferred stock warrant liability was measured at fair value on a recurring basis. Changes in fair value were recorded in change in fair value of preferred stock warrant liability in the Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss. As of December 31, 2013, the fair value of this convertible preferred stock warrant liability amounted to \$6.5 million. Just prior to the IPO close date of June 24, 2014, the preferred stock warrant liability was remeasured prior to the net exercise of the warrants using the IPO price. The preferred stock warrants were net exercised upon the completion of our initial public offering (IPO) in June 2014 and were reclassified to stockholder’s equity.

10. EQUITY INCENTIVE PLANS

2008 Plan

The Company granted options under its 2008 Stock Incentive Plan (the “2008 Plan”) until June 2014 when it was terminated as to future awards, although it continues to govern the terms of options that remain outstanding under the 2008 Plan. The 2008 Plan provided for the granting of incentive and nonstatutory stock options, and stock purchase rights to employees, directors and consultants at the discretion of the Board of Directors. Stock options granted generally vest over a period of four years from the date of grant. In connection with the Board of Directors and stockholders’ approval of the 2014 Plan, all remaining shares available for future award under the 2008 Plan were transferred to 2014 Plan, and the 2008 Plan was terminated.

2014 Plan

The 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan (“2014 Plan”) became effective on June 18, 2014, immediately prior to the time the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-1 became effective. Under the 2014 Plan, 1,419,328 shares of common stock were initially reserved for issuance pursuant to a variety of stock-based compensation awards, including stock options, stock appreciation rights, or SARs, restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit (RSU) awards, deferred stock awards, deferred stock unit awards, dividend equivalent awards, stock payment awards and performance awards. In addition, 35,221 shares that had been available for future awards under the 2008 Plan as of June 18, 2014, were added to the initial reserve available under the 2014 Plan, bringing the total reserve upon the effective date of the 2014 Plan to 1,454,549. The number of shares initially reserved for issuance or transfer pursuant to awards under the 2014 Plan will be increased by (i) the number of shares represented by awards outstanding under 2008 Plan on June 18, 2014, that are either forfeited or lapse unexercised or that are repurchased for the original purchase price thereof, up to a maximum of 1,153,279 shares, and (ii) if approved by the Administrator of the 2014 Plan, an annual increase on the first day of each fiscal year ending in 2024, equal to the lesser of (A) four percent (4.0%) of the shares of stock outstanding (on an as converted basis) on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year and (B) such smaller number of shares of stock as determined by our board of directors; provided, however, that no more than 10,683,053 shares of stock may be issued upon the exercise of incentive stock options. Effective January 1, 2017, the 2014 Plan share reserve was increased by 1,892,376 shares.

2016 Plan

In November 2016, the Company’s board of directors approved the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan (the Inducement Plan) under which 1,000,000 shares were reserved. As of December 31, 2016, no shares of the Company’s common stock were subject to inducement grants that were issued pursuant to the Inducement Plan.

[Table of Contents](#)

Stock Plan Activity

The following table summarizes activity under the 2008 Plan, the 2014 Plan, and the Inducement Plan, including grants to nonemployees issued:

	Shares Available for Grant	Options Issued and Outstanding		Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
		Number of Shares	Weighted-Average Exercise Price per Share	
Balance at December 31, 2013	3,914	1,162,829	\$ 1.03	
Options authorized	1,452,661	—	—	
Options granted	(188,888)	188,888	24.41	
Options exercised	—	(336,398)	0.71	
Options canceled	4,084	(4,084)	2.21	
Options repurchased	3,511	(3,511)	0.55	
Issuance of common stock for services	(10,000)	—	—	
Balance at December 31, 2014	1,265,282	1,007,724	\$ 5.51	
Options authorized	743,569	—	—	
Options granted	(379,709)	379,709	19.60	
Options exercised	—	(77,784)	1.42	
Options canceled	28,563	(28,563)	12.41	
Issuance of common stock for services	(13,285)	—	—	
Balance at December 31, 2015	1,644,420	1,281,086	\$ 9.78	
Options authorized	1,038,595	—	—	
Additional shares reserved under the Inducement Plan	1,000,000	—	—	
Options granted	(1,524,014)	1,524,014	11.42	
Options exercised	—	(25,134)	2.19	
Options canceled	67,743	(67,743)	16.67	
Issuance of common stock for services	(20,118)	—	—	
Balance at December 31, 2016	<u>2,206,626</u>	<u>2,712,223</u>	\$ 10.60	\$ 13,750
Vested and expected to vest at December 31, 2016		<u>2,640,905</u>	\$ 10.54	\$ 13,574
Vested at December 31, 2016		<u>1,263,430</u>	\$ 7.58	\$ 10,187

The weighted-average grant-date estimated fair value of options granted during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$7.69, \$12.91 and \$18.53 per share. The aggregate intrinsic value was calculated as the difference between the exercise price of the options and the estimated fair value of the Company's common stock of \$14.20 per share as of December 31, 2016.

The total estimated fair value of options that vested during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$6.4 million, \$2.4 million and \$0.5 million, respectively.

Restricted Stock Units

During 2016, the Compensation Committee made awards of RSUs to certain employees of the Company. The RSUs awarded under the Plan are generally subject to ratable vesting and are contingent on such employee's continued service on such date.

[Table of Contents](#)

RSUs are generally subject to forfeiture if employment terminates prior to the release of vesting restrictions. The Company expenses the cost of the RSUs, which is determined to be the fair market value of the shares of common stock underlying the RSUs at the date of grant, ratably over the period during which the vesting restrictions lapse.

A summary of non-vested RSU activity under the Plan for the year ended December 31, 2016 is as follows:

	<u>Number of Shares</u>	<u>Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value Per Share</u>
Non-vested restricted stock units at December 31, 2015	9,425	\$ 18.04
Granted	174,389	14.34
Vested	(30,122)	16.35
Forfeited	(5,000)	18.04
Non-vested restricted stock units at December 31, 2016	<u>148,692</u>	<u>\$ 14.17</u>

The total estimated fair value of restricted stock vested during 2016 was \$0.5 million.

Employee Stock Purchase Plan

The Company adopted the 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (ESPP) and initially reserved 202,762 shares of common stock as of its effective date of June 18, 2014. If approved by the Administrator of the ESPP, on the first day of each calendar year, ending in 2024, the number of shares in the reserve will increase by an amount equal to the lesser of (i) one percent (1.0%) of the shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year and (ii) such number of shares of common stock as determined by the board of directors; provided, however, no more than 2,230,374 shares of our common stock may be issued under the ESPP. Effective January 1, 2015, the ESPP share reserve was increased by 185,892. Under the ESPP, participants are offered the option to purchase shares of the Company's common stock at a discount during a series of successive offering periods normally commencing on March 1 and September 1 of each year. The initial offering period commenced on September 1, 2014 and will end on February 27, 2015. As of December 31, 2016 278,020 shares were available for future issuance under the ESPP.

The following table illustrates the weighted-average assumptions for the Black-Scholes option-pricing model used in determining the fair value of ESPP purchase rights granted to employees:

	<u>Year Ended December 31, 2016</u>	
	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
Expected term (years)	0.5	0.5
Volatility	76%	97%
Risk-free interest rate	0.48%	0.16%
Dividend yield	— %	— %

There were no shares issued during the year ended December 31, 2014 under the ESPP. In 2015, the Company sold 41,580 shares of its common stock under the ESPP. The shares were purchased at a weighted-average purchase price of \$13.25 with proceeds of approximately \$0.6 million. In 2016, the Company sold 69,054 shares of its common stock under the ESPP. The shares were purchased at a weighted-average purchase price of \$8.34 with proceeds of approximately \$0.6 million.

Modification of Stock Awards

During September 2014, the Company entered into a Transition and Separation Agreement with its Chief Scientific Officer, Dominique Charmot, under which certain restricted shares that were subject to vesting and

[Table of Contents](#)

repurchase by the Company have become fully vested as of Dr. Charmot's separation from the Company as an employee and director on December 23, 2014. This resulted in the acceleration of the vesting for 58,969 shares of restricted stock. As a result of the acceleration, the Company has recorded a stock-based compensation charge of \$0.8 million during the year ended December 31, 2014 to reflect the revised service period for the restricted stock and related vesting of shares that would otherwise not have vested.

Offering of Common Stock and Warrants

In June 2015, the Company sold and issued an aggregate of 7,242,992 shares of its common stock and warrants to purchase 2,172,899 shares of common stock for aggregate gross proceeds of approximately \$77.8 million or net proceeds, after deducting issuance costs, of approximately \$74.3 million. The purchase price for the common stock was \$10.70 per share and the purchase price for the warrants was \$0.125 per warrant. The warrants are exercisable for an exercise price of \$13.91 per share at any time prior to the earlier of (i) 5 years from the date of issuance or (ii) certain changes in control of the Company. The Company has determined that the warrants should be classified as equity. In July 2015, the Company filed a registration statement with the SEC with respect to the common stock and warrants.

Other than with respect to warrants issued to holders affiliated with New Enterprise Associates, the warrants contain limitations that prevent each holder of warrants from acquiring shares upon exercise of the warrants that would cause the number of shares beneficially owned by it and its affiliates to exceed 9.99% of the total number of shares of the Company's common stock then issued and outstanding. In addition, upon certain changes in control of the Company, each holder of a warrant can elect to receive, subject to certain limitations and assumptions, securities in a successor entity. None of the warrants issued in June 2015 have been exercised during each of the years ended December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2016.

Stock-based Compensation

Total stock-based compensation recognized was as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(in thousands)		
Research and development	\$2,786	\$1,327	\$1,376
General and administrative	2,531	1,307	316
Total stock-based compensation	<u>\$5,317</u>	<u>\$2,634</u>	<u>\$1,692</u>

As of December 31, 2016, the Company had \$11.5 million, \$2.1 million and \$0.1 million of total unrecognized compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, related to stock option grants, restricted stock unit grants and ESPP, respectively, that will be recognized over an average vesting period of 2.9 years, 3.5 years and 0.2 years, respectively.

The estimated grant date fair value of employee stock options was calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model, based on the following weighted assumptions:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Expected term (years)	5.99	5.89	5.97
Volatility	77%	75%	94%
Risk-free interest rate	1.62%	1.64%	1.79%
Dividend yield	— %	— %	— %

[Table of Contents](#)

Expected Term—The Company has very limited historical information to develop reasonable expectations about future exercise patterns and post-vesting employment termination behavior for its stock-option grants. As such, the expected term was estimated using the simplified method whereby the expected term equals the arithmetic average of the vesting term and the original contractual term of the option.

Expected Volatility—Since the Company has only been publicly traded for a short period and does not have adequate trading history for its common stock, the expected stock price volatility was calculated based on the average historical volatility for *comparable* publicly traded pharmaceutical companies. The Company selected companies with comparable characteristics, including enterprise value, risk profiles, position within the industry, and with historical share price information sufficient to meet the expected life of the Company's stock-based awards.

Risk-Free Interest Rate—The risk-free interest rate assumption is based on the zero-coupon U.S. Treasury instruments on the date of grant with a maturity date consistent with the expected term of the Company's stock option grants.

Expected Dividend—To date, the Company has not declared or paid any cash dividends and does not have any plans to do so in the future. Therefore, the Company used an expected dividend yield of zero.

Options Granted to Nonemployees.

The Company has granted options to purchase shares of common stock to consultants in exchange for services performed. The Company granted options to purchase 12,500, 5,000 and 10,000 shares with average exercise prices of \$13.71, \$18.58 and \$20.77 per share, respectively, during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. These options vest upon grant or various terms up to three years. The Company recognized non-employee stock compensation expense of \$0.1 million, \$0.2 million and \$0.1 million during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Compensation expense for non-employee stock options is calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model and is recorded as the options vest. Options subject to vesting are required to be periodically revalued over their service period, which is generally the same as the vesting period.

Issuance of Common Stock for Services

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company issued 20,118 shares of common stock in exchange for services performed. The shares issued were valued at \$0.2 million based on the fair value of the common stock on the date of grant. During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company issued 13,285 shares of common stock in exchange for services performed. The shares issued were valued at \$0.2 million based on the fair value of the common stock on the date of grant. During the year ended December 31, 2014, the Company issued 10,000 shares of common stock in exchange for services performed. The shares issued were valued at \$0.2 million based on the fair value of the common stock on the date of grant.

11. INCOME TAXES

The following is a reconciliation of the statutory federal income tax rate to the Company's effective tax rate:

	December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Expected income tax provision at the federal statutory rate	35.0%	35.0%	35.0%
State taxes, net of federal benefit	0.3	(3.8)	4.6
Change in valuation allowance	(36.2)	(30.7)	(17.9)
Nondeductible expenses	—	—	(20.6)
Tax credits	0.3	1.3	—
Other	0.6	(1.7)	(3.2)
Income tax provision	<u>0.0%</u>	<u>0.1%</u>	<u>(2.1%)</u>

Significant components of the Company's deferred tax assets are as follows:

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
(in thousands)		
Deferred tax assets:		
Net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 68,639	\$ 30,572
Research credits	2,643	1,919
Stock awards	2,583	1,011
Other	<u>1,558</u>	<u>571</u>
Gross deferred tax assets	75,423	34,073
Valuation allowance	<u>(74,520)</u>	<u>(33,845)</u>
Total deferred tax assets	903	228
Deferred tax liabilities	<u>(903)</u>	<u>(228)</u>
Net deferred tax assets	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

The Company assesses the available positive and negative evidence to estimate whether sufficient future taxable income will be generated to permit use of the existing deferred tax assets. A significant piece of objective negative evidence evaluated was the cumulative loss incurred over the two-year periods ended December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015. Such objective evidence limits the ability to consider other subjective evidence, such as our projections for future growth. On the basis of this evaluation, as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, full valuation allowance has been recorded against Company's net deferred tax asset. The amount of the deferred tax asset considered realizable, however, could be adjusted if estimates of future taxable income during the carryforward period are reduced or increased or if objective negative evidence in the form of cumulative losses is no longer present and additional weight is given to subjective evidence such as our projections for growth. The valuation allowance increased by approximately \$40.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The valuation allowance increased by approximately \$9.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2015.

At December 31, 2016, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards for federal income tax purposes of approximately \$192.0 million that expire beginning in 2030 if not utilized, and federal research and development tax credit carryforwards of approximately \$3.4 million that expire beginning in 2027 if not utilized. In addition, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards for California income tax purposes of approximately \$31.1 million that expire beginning of 2030 if not utilized, and state research and development tax credit carryforwards of approximately \$3.8 million which can be carried forward indefinitely. The Company had other state net operating losses of approximately \$1.1 million that begin to expire in 2025. The Company had approximately insignificant and \$0.2 million of minimum tax credit carryovers for federal and California income tax purposes, respectively. The minimum tax credits have no expiration date.

[Table of Contents](#)

The future utilization of the net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards and credits may be subject to an annual limitation, pursuant to Internal Revenue Code Sections 382 and 383, as a result of ownership changes that may have occurred previously or that could occur in the future. Due to the existence of the valuation allowance, future changes under Sections 382 and 383 will not impact the Company's effective tax rate.

A reconciliation of the beginning and ending amount of unrecognized tax benefits is as follows:

	December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(in thousands)		
Balance at beginning of year	\$3,298	\$2,815	\$1,411
Additions (subtractions) based on tax positions related to prior year	45	(58)	405
Additions based on tax positions related to current year	549	541	999
Balance at end of year	<u>\$3,892</u>	<u>\$3,298</u>	<u>\$2,815</u>

The unrecognized tax benefits, if recognized and in absence of full valuation allowance, would impact the income tax provision by \$3.9 million, \$3.3 million and \$2.8 million as of December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

The Company has elected to include interest and penalties as a component of tax expense. During the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, the Company did not recognize accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits. Although the timing and outcome of an income tax audit is highly uncertain, the Company does not anticipate that the amount of existing unrecognized tax benefits will significantly change during the next 12 months.

The Company files income tax returns in the U.S. federal, California, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Hampshire and New Jersey, tax jurisdictions. Due to the Company's net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards, the income tax returns remain open to U.S. federal and California state tax examinations. The Company is not currently under examination in any tax jurisdiction.

12. NET LOSS PER SHARE

Basic net loss per share is calculated by dividing net loss by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period, less shares subject to repurchase, and excludes any dilutive effects of share-based awards and warrants. Diluted net loss per common share is computed giving effect to all potential dilutive common shares, including common stock issuable upon exercise of stock options, and unvested restricted common stock and stock units. As the Company had net losses for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, all potential common shares were determined to be anti-dilutive. The following table sets forth the computation of net loss per common share (in thousands, except share and per share amounts):

	December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Numerator:			
Net loss	<u>\$ (112,387)</u>	<u>\$ (29,621)</u>	<u>\$ (3,214)</u>
Denominator:			
Weighted average number of shares outstanding—basic and diluted	<u>40,118,522</u>	<u>22,892,640</u>	<u>10,248,337</u>
Net loss per share-basic and diluted	<u>\$ (2.80)</u>	<u>\$ (1.29)</u>	<u>\$ (0.31)</u>

[Table of Contents](#)

Potentially dilutive securities that were not included in the diluted per share calculations because they would be anti-dilutive were as follows:

	December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
Options to purchase common stock	2,557,314	1,244,442	1,007,724
Warrants to purchase common stock	2,172,899	300,302	—
Total	<u>4,730,213</u>	<u>1,544,744</u>	<u>1,007,724</u>

13. RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

There were no related party transactions in 2016 and 2015.

As part of the consulting arrangement with the spouse of an executive of the Company to provide research and development services related to clinical operations, the Company incurred expenses of \$0.2 million for services rendered during year ended December 31, 2014.

14. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

The Company has a lease agreement for a facility in Fremont, California that was amended in December 2012 to extend the lease agreement to September 2016. In September 2014, the Company signed the second amendment to its facility lease agreement in Fremont, California to add space and to extend the lease term through September 2019. In addition, the amended lease agreement provides for a tenant improvement allowance of up to \$0.6 million. In May 2016, the Company signed a third amendment to its facility lease agreement in Fremont, California to add space and to extend the lease term through September 2021 (the "Third Amendment"). The Third Amendment provides for a tenant improvement allowance of up to \$0.4 million and the extended lease has rent escalation clauses throughout the lease term. Rent increases, including the impact of a rent holiday and leasehold improvement allowance from the landlord, will be recognized as deferred rent and amortized on a straight-line basis over the term of the lease.

Under the terms of the lease agreement, the Company provided the lessor with a security deposit in the amount of \$0.1 million. The lessor shall be entitled to draw on the security deposit in the event of any uncured default by the Company under the terms of the lease.

The future minimum payments under the noncancelable operating lease at December 31, 2016, are as follows (in thousands):

Year ending December 31,	Amounts
2017	\$ 1,460
2018	1,502
2019	1,686
2020	2,026
2021	1,439
Total	<u>\$ 8,113</u>

Rent expense under operating leases was \$1.3 million, \$0.9 million and \$0.6 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

[Table of Contents](#)**Guarantees and Indemnifications**

The Company indemnifies each of its officers and directors for certain events or occurrences, subject to certain limits, while the officer or director is or was serving at our request in such capacity, as permitted under Delaware law and in accordance with our certificate of incorporation and bylaws. The term of the indemnification period lasts as long as an officer or director may be subject to any proceeding arising out of acts or omissions of such officer or director in such capacity.

The maximum amount of potential future indemnification is unlimited; however, the Company currently holds director and officer liability insurance. This insurance allows the transfer of risk associated with our exposure and may enable the Company to recover a portion of any future amounts paid. The Company believes that the fair value of these indemnification obligations is minimal. Accordingly, the Company has not recognized any liabilities relating to these obligations for any period presented.

15. SELECTED QUARTERLY FINANCIAL DATA (UNAUDITED)

Selected quarterly financial results from operations for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 are as follows (in thousands, except per share amounts):

	2016 Quarter End			
	March 31,	June 30	September 30	December 31
Total revenue	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Operating expenses	23,529	28,690	29,200	31,476
Net loss	(23,467)	(28,613)	(29,031)	(31,276)
Net loss per share:				
Basic and Diluted	(0.70)	(0.83)	(0.65)	(0.66)

	2015 Quarter End			
	March 31,	June 30	September 30	December 31
Total revenue	\$ 5,883	\$ 18,143	\$ —	\$ —
Operating expenses	9,373	9,087	18,079	16,876
Net (loss) income	(3,502)	9,007	(18,126)	(17,000)
Net (loss) income per share:				
Basic	(0.19)	0.43	(0.70)	(0.65)
Diluted	(0.19)	0.42	(0.70)	(0.65)

16. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

None.

ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

None.

ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Conclusions Regarding the Effectiveness of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

As of December 31, 2016, management, with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, performed an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) of the Exchange Act. Our disclosure controls and procedures are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in the reports we file or submit under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission's rules and forms, and that such information is accumulated and communicated to our management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosures.

Any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objective and management necessarily applies its judgment in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of possible controls and procedures. Based on this evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that, as of December 31, 2016, the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures were effective at a reasonable assurance level.

Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed by, or under the supervision of, our CEO and CFO, and effected by our Board of Directors, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and includes those policies and procedures that:

- Pertain to the maintenance of records that accurately and fairly reflect in reasonable detail the transactions and dispositions of the assets of our company;
- Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that our receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our management and directors; and
- Provide reasonable assurances regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material adverse effect on our financial statements.

Our management assessed our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2016, the end the period covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Management based its assessment on criteria established in "Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013)" issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on management's assessment of our internal control over financial reporting, management concluded that, as of December 31, 2016, our internal control over financial reporting was effective.

Internal control over financial reporting has inherent limitations. Internal control over financial reporting is a process that involves human diligence and compliance and is subject to lapses in judgment and breakdowns resulting from human failures. Internal control over financial reporting also can be circumvented by collusion or improper management override. Because of such limitations, there is a risk that material misstatements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by internal control over financial reporting. However, these inherent limitations are known features of the financial reporting process. Therefore, it is possible to design into the process safeguards to reduce, though not eliminate, this risk.

[Table of Contents](#)

Attestation Report of the Registered Public Accounting Firm

This Annual Report on Form 10-K does not include an attestation report of our registered public accounting firm due to an exemption established by the JOBS Act for “emerging growth companies.”

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There were no changes in our internal controls over financial reporting during the quarter ended December 31, 2016 identified in connection with the evaluation required by Rule 13a-15(d) and 15d-15(d) of the Exchange Act that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

PART III

ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Information required by this item will be contained in our definitive proxy statement to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on Schedule 14A in connection with our 2017 Annual Meeting of Stockholders (the “Proxy Statement”), which will be filed not later than 120 days after the end of our fiscal year ended December 31, 2016, under the headings “Executive Officers,” “Election of Directors,” “Corporate Governance,” and “Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance,” and is incorporated herein by reference.

We have adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that applies to our officers, directors and employees which is available on our website at www.ardelyx.com. The Code of Business Conduct and Ethics is intended to qualify as a “code of ethics” within the meaning of Section 406 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and Item 406 of Regulation S-K. In addition, we intend to promptly disclose (1) the nature of any amendment to our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that applies to our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller or persons performing similar functions and (2) the nature of any waiver, including an implicit waiver, from a provision of our code of ethics that is granted to one of these specified officers, the name of such person who is granted the waiver and the date of the waiver on our website in the future.

ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The information required by this item regarding executive compensation will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the sections titled “Executive Compensation” in our Proxy Statement.

ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The information required by this item regarding security ownership of certain beneficial owners and management will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the section titled “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management” and “Equity Compensation Plan Information” in our Proxy Statement.

ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The information required by this item regarding certain relationships and related transactions and director independence will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the sections titled “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions” and “Election of Directors”, respectively, in our Proxy Statement.

ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES

The information required by this item regarding principal accountant fees and services will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the section titled “Principal Accountant Fees and Services” in our Proxy Statement.

PART IV

ITEM 15. EXHIBITS, FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

(a) The following documents are filed as part of this report:

1. Financial Statements

See Index to Financial Statements at Item 8 herein.

2. Financial Statement Schedules

All schedules are omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is shown in the financial statements or notes thereto.

3. Exhibits

See the Exhibit Index immediately following the signature page of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

Ardelyx, Inc.

Date: February 17, 2017

By: /s/ Michael Raab

Michael Raab
President Chief Executive Officer and Director
(Principal Executive Officer)

POWER OF ATTORNEY

Each person whose individual signature appears below hereby authorizes and appoints Michael Raab and Mark Kaufmann, and each of them, with full power of substitution and resubstitution and full power to act without the other, as his or her true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent to act in his or her name, place and stead and to execute in the name and on behalf of each person, individually and in each capacity stated below, and to file any and all amendments to this annual report on Form 10-K and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing, ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents or any of them or their or his substitute or substitutes may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Michael Raab</u> Michael Raab	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director <i>(Principal Executive Officer)</i>	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Mark Kaufmann</u> Mark Kaufmann	Chief Financial Officer <i>(Principal Financial Officer)</i>	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Bryan Shaw</u> Bryan Shaw	Vice President, Corporate Controller <i>(Principal Accounting Officer)</i>	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ David Mott</u> David Mott	Chairman of the Board of Directors	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Robert Bazemore</u> Robert Bazemore	Director	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ William Bertrand, Jr.</u> William Bertrand, Jr.	Director	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Annalisa Jenkins, MBBS, MRCP</u> Annalisa Jenkins, MBBS, MRCP	Director	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Gordon Ringold, Ph.D.</u> Gordon Ringold, Ph.D.	Director	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Richard Rodgers</u> Richard Rodgers	Director	February 17, 2017

Exhibit Index

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated by Reference			
		Form	Date	Number	Filed Herewith
3.1	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.	8-K	6/24/2014	3.1	
3.2	Amended and Restated Bylaws.	8-K	6/24/2014	3.2	
4.1	Reference is made to exhibits 3.1 and 3.2.				
4.2	Form of Common Stock Certificate.	S-1/A	6/18/2014	4.2	
4.3	Form of Warrant issued pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the purchasers signatory thereto, dated June 2, 2015	S-3	7/13/2015	4.3	
10.1(c)	Termination Agreement, dated June 2, 2015, by and between AstraZeneca AB and Ardelyx, Inc.	10-Q	8/12/2015	10.1	
10.1(d)	Amendment No. 1 to Termination Agreement and to Manufacturing and Supply Agreement, dated November 2, 2015 by and between AstraZeneca AB and Ardelyx, Inc.	10-K	3/4/2016	10.1	
10.2†	License and Option Agreement, dated February 21, 2014, by and between Sanofi and Ardelyx, Inc.	S-1/A	6/5/2014	10.2	
10.3	Amended and Restated Investor's Rights Agreement dated June 23, 2011, by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the investors listed therein.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.3	
10.4(a)	Lease, dated August 8, 2008, by and between 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC and Ardelyx, Inc.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.4(a)	
10.4(b)	Amendment to Lease, dated December 20, 2012, by and between 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC and Ardelyx, Inc.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.4(b)	
10.4(c)	Second Amendment to Lease, dated September 5, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC.	8-K	9/9/2014	10.1	
10.4(c)	Third Amendment to Lease, dated April 28, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC.	10-Q	8/8/2016	10.3	
10.5(a)#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.5(a)	
10.5(b)#	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice and Stock Option Agreement under the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.5(b)	
10.5(c)#	Form of Restricted Stock Purchase Grant Notice and Restricted Stock Purchase Agreement under the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.5(c)	
10.6(a)#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan.	S-8	7/14/2014	99.3	
10.6(b)#	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice and Stock Option Agreement under the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan.	S-1/A	6/18/2014	10.6(b)	

Table of Contents

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated by Reference			
		Form	Date	Number	Filed Herewith
10.6(c)#	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement and Restricted Stock Unit Award Grant Notice under the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan.	S-1/A	6/18/2014	10.6(c)	
10.7#	Form of Indemnification Agreement for directors and officers.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.7	
10.8#	Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Michael Raab.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.8	
10.9#	Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Mark Kaufmann.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.15	
10.10#	Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Elizabeth Grammer, Esq.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.16	
10.11#	Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Jeffrey Jacobs, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.17	
10.12#	Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and David Rosenbaum, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.19	
10.13#	Offer Letter, dated August 11, 2011, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Mark Kaufmann.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.10	
10.14#	Offer Letter, dated May 2, 2008, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Jeff Jacobs, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.12	
10.15#	Offer Letter, dated December 28, 2009, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and David Rosenbaum, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.13	
10.16#	Offer Letter, dated November 21, 2012, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Elizabeth Grammer, Esq.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.14	
10.19#	Offer Letter, dated November 21, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Jeremy S. Caldwell, Ph.D.	10-K	3/5/2015	10.22	
10.20#	Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated December 19, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Jeremy S. Caldwell, Ph.D.	10-K	3/5/2015	10.23	
10.21#	Offer Letter, dated December 12, 2015, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Paul Komer, MD, MBA	10-K	3/4/2016	10.21	
10.22#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan.	S-8	7/14/2014	99.6	
10.23#	Non-Employee Director Compensation Program.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.21	
10.24	Securities Purchase Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the purchasers signatory thereto, dated June 2, 2015	10-Q	8/12/15	10.2	
10.25	Registration Rights Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the investors signatory thereto, dated June 2, 2015	S-3	7/13/15	99.1	

Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Exhibit Description</u>	<u>Incorporated by Reference</u>			<u>Filed Herewith</u>
		<u>Form</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Number</u>	
10.26	Securities Purchase Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the purchasers signatory thereto, dated July 14, 2016	10-Q	8/8/16	10.1	
10.27	Registration Rights Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the investors signatory thereto, dated July 14, 2016	10-Q	8/8/16	10.1	
10.28(a)#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/9/16	99.1	
10.28(b)#	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice and Stock Option Agreement under the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/9/16	99.2	
10.28(c)#	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Award Grant Notice and Restricted Stock Unit Award Agreement under the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/9/16	99.3	
10.28(d)#	Form of Restricted Stock Award Grant Notice and Restricted Stock Award Agreement under the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/9/16	99.4	
10.29#	Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated January 4, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Paul Komer, MD, MBA				X
10.30#	Offer Letter, dated October 1, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Reginald Kim Seeto, MB.BS; B.Sc.				X
10.31#	Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated October 22, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Reginald Kim Seeto, MB.BS; B.Sc.				X
10.32#	Offer Letter, dated November 15, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Bryan Shaw.				X
10.33#	Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated December 6, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Bryan Shaw.				X
12.1	Statement Regarding the Computation of Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges				X
23.1	Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm				X
31.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer Required Under Rule 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.				X
31.2	Certification of Principal Financial Officer Required Under Rule 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.				X

[Table of Contents](#)

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Exhibit Description</u>	<u>Incorporated by Reference</u>			<u>Filed Herewith</u>
		<u>Form</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Number</u>	
32.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer and Principal Financial Officer Required Under Rule 13a-14(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and 18 U.S.C §1350.				X
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document				X
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document				X
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document				X
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document				X
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document				X
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document				X

† Confidential treatment granted as to portions of this Exhibit. The confidential portions of this Exhibit have been omitted and are marked by asterisks.

Indicates management contract or compensatory plan.

ARDELYX, INC.

CHANGE IN CONTROL SEVERANCE AGREEMENT

This Change in Control Severance Agreement (the "Agreement") is made and entered into by and between Paul Korner, MD, MBA (the "Executive") and Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company"), effective as January 4, 2016 (the "Effective Date").

RECITALS

A. It is expected that the Company from time to time will consider the possibility of an acquisition by another company or other change in control. The Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board") recognizes that such consideration as well as the possibility of an involuntary termination or reduction in responsibility can be a distraction to Executive and can cause Executive to consider alternative employment opportunities. The Board has determined that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to assure that the Company will have the continued dedication and objectivity of Executive, notwithstanding the possibility, threat or occurrence of such an event.

B. The Board believes that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to provide Executive with an incentive to continue Executive's employment and to motivate Executive to maximize the value of the Company upon a Change in Control (as defined below) for the benefit of its stockholders.

C. The Board believes that it is imperative to provide Executive with severance benefits upon certain terminations of Executive's service to the Company that enhance Executive's financial security and provide incentive and encouragement to Executive to remain with the Company notwithstanding the possibility of such an event.

D. The Board believes that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to provide Executive with certain transition payments as an incentive to join the Company.

E. Certain capitalized terms used in this Agreement are defined in Section 8 below.

The parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Term of Agreement. This Agreement shall become effective as of the Effective Date and terminate upon the date that all obligations of the parties hereto with respect to this Agreement have been satisfied.

2. Signing Bonus and Relocation Bonus. The Company shall pay the Executive a signing bonus in the amount of one hundred thirty thousand dollars (\$130,000) (the "Signing Bonus") in a single cash lump sum, less required withholding obligations, on or before Executive's fifth day of employment with the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive acknowledges and agrees that the Signing Bonus shall not be earned to any extent prior to the first anniversary of the commencement of Executive's employment, shall be earned only with respect to

50% of the Signing Bonus on the first anniversary of Executive's commencement of employment if Executive remains continuously employed with the Company through such date and shall only be fully earned on the second anniversary of Executive's commencement of employment if Executive remains continuously employed with the Company through such date. If the Executive's employment with the Company terminates prior to the second anniversary of Executive's commencement of employment with the Company and such termination does not constitute a Covered Termination, then the Executive shall repay to the Company the portion of the Signing Bonus that is not earned prior to the date of termination.

The Company and Executive acknowledge and agree that the Executive will relocate his permanent residence to the San Francisco Bay Area within two (2) years of the Effective Date. Provided that the Executive has relocated to the Bay Area within such two year period, the Company will pay the Executive a relocation allowance equal to two hundred thirty seven thousand eight hundred ninety-five dollars (\$237,895.00) within thirty (30) days of relocation.

3. At-Will Employment. The Company and Executive acknowledge that Executive's employment is and shall continue to be "at-will," as defined under applicable law. If Executive's employment terminates for any reason, Executive shall not be entitled to any payments, benefits, damages, awards or compensation other than as provided by this Agreement.

4. Covered Termination Other Than During a Change in Control Period. If Executive experiences a Covered Termination other than during a Change in Control Period, and if Executive delivers to the Company a general release of all claims against the Company and its affiliates in a form acceptable to the Company (a "Release of Claims") that becomes effective and irrevocable within sixty (60) days, or such shorter period of time specified by the Company, following such Covered Termination, then in addition to any accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement payable in accordance with applicable law, the Company shall provide Executive with the following:

(a) Severance. Executive shall be entitled to receive an amount equal to nine (9) months of Executive's Base Salary payable in substantially equal installments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll policies, less applicable withholdings, with such installments to commence as soon as administratively practicable following the date the Release of Claims is not subject to revocation and, in any event, within sixty (60) days following the date of the Covered Termination.

(b) Continued Healthcare. If Executive elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the provisions of the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended ("COBRA"), the Company shall directly pay, or reimburse Executive for, the premium for Executive and Executive's covered dependents through the earlier of (i) the first (1st) anniversary of the date of Executive's termination of employment and (ii) the date Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise

unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 4 (b), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

5. Covered Termination During a Change in Control Period. If Executive experiences a Covered Termination during a Change in Control Period, and if Executive delivers to the Company a Release of Claims that becomes effective and irrevocable within sixty (60) days, or such shorter period of time specified by the Company, following such Covered Termination, then in addition to any accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement payable in accordance with applicable law, the Company shall provide Executive with the following:

(a) Severance. Executive shall be entitled to receive an amount equal to one hundred percent of the sum of: (i) Executive's Base Salary and (ii) Executive's target annual bonus for the fiscal year of Executive's termination, in each case, at the rate in effect immediately prior to Executive's termination of employment payable in a cash lump sum, less applicable withholdings, as soon as administratively practicable following the date the Release of Claims is not subject to revocation and, in any event, within sixty (60) days following the date of the Covered Termination.

(b) Equity Awards. Each outstanding equity award, including, without limitation, each stock option and restricted stock award, held by Executive shall automatically become vested and, if applicable, exercisable and any forfeiture restrictions or rights of repurchase thereon shall immediately lapse, in each case, with respect to one hundred percent (100%) of the shares subject thereto. To the extent vested after giving effect to the acceleration provided in the preceding sentence, each stock option held by Executive shall remain exercisable until the earlier of the original expiration date for such stock option or the first anniversary of Executive's Covered Termination.

(c) Continued Healthcare. If Executive elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the provisions of COBRA, the Company shall directly pay, or reimburse Executive for, the premium for Executive and Executive's covered dependents through the earlier of (i) the first (1st) anniversary of the date of Executive's termination of employment and (ii) the date Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 5(c), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

6. Other Terminations. If Executive's service with the Company is terminated by the Company or by Executive for any or no reason other than as a Covered Termination, then Executive shall not be entitled to any benefits hereunder other than accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement in accordance with applicable law and to elect any continued healthcare coverage as may be required under COBRA or similar state law.

7. Limitation on Payments. Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, if any payment or distribution Executive would receive pursuant to this Agreement or otherwise ("Payment") would (a) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and (b) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall either be (i) delivered in full, or (ii) delivered as to such lesser extent which would result in no portion of such Payment being subject to the Excise Tax, whichever of the foregoing amounts, taking into account the applicable federal, state and local income taxes and the Excise Tax, results in the receipt by Executive on an after-tax basis, of the largest payment, notwithstanding that all or some portion the Payment may be taxable under Section 4999 of the Code. The accounting firm engaged by the Company for general audit purposes as of the day prior to the effective date of the Change in Control shall perform the foregoing calculations. The Company shall bear all expenses with respect to the determinations by such accounting firm required to be made hereunder. The accounting firm shall provide its calculations to the Company and Executive within fifteen (15) calendar days after the date on which Executive's right to a Payment is triggered (if requested at that time by the Company or Executive) or such other time as requested by the Company or Executive. Any good faith determinations of the accounting firm made hereunder shall be final, binding and conclusive upon the Company and Executive. Any reduction in payments and/or benefits pursuant to this Section 7 will occur in the following order: (1) reduction of cash payments; (2) cancellation of accelerated vesting of equity awards other than stock options; (3) cancellation of accelerated vesting of stock options; and (4) reduction of other benefits payable to Executive.

8. Definition of Terms. The following terms referred to in this Agreement shall have the following meanings:

(a) Base Salary. "Base Salary" means Executive's annual base salary in effect immediately prior to Executive's termination (disregarding any reduction in base salary that would give rise to Executive's right to a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason).

(b) Cause. "Cause" means (i) Executive's theft, dishonesty or falsification of any employment or Company records that is non-trivial in nature; (ii) Executive's malicious or reckless disclosure of the Company's confidential or proprietary information or any material breach by Executive of his or her obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement (as defined below); (iii) the conviction of the Executive of a felony (excluding motor vehicle violations) or the commission of gross negligence or willful misconduct, where a majority of the non-employee members of the Board reasonably determines that such act or misconduct has (A) seriously undermined the ability of the Board or management of the Company to entrust Executive with

important matters or otherwise work effectively with Executive, (B) substantially contributed to the Company's loss of significant revenues or business opportunities, or (C) significantly and detrimentally affected the business or reputation of the Company or any of its subsidiaries; and/or (iv) the willful failure or refusal by Executive to follow the reasonable and lawful directives of the Board or Executive's direct supervisor, provided such willful failure or refusal continues after Executive's receipt of reasonable notice in writing of such failure or refusal and a reasonable opportunity of not less than 30 days to correct the problem. For the purpose of this Agreement, no act, or failure to act, shall be considered "willful" unless undertaken by Executive with an absence of good faith that this act, or failure to act, was in the best interests of the Company.

(c) Change in Control. "Change in Control" shall have the meaning set forth in the Company's 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan, as it may be amended from time to time, provided that such event must also constitute a "change in control event" as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5).

(d) Change in Control Period. "Change in Control Period" means the period of time beginning three (3) months prior to and ending twelve (12) months following a Change in Control.

(e) Covered Termination. "Covered Termination" means (a) an Involuntary Termination Without Cause or (b) a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason, provided that such termination or resignation constitutes a Separation from Service.

(f) Good Reason Condition. "Good Reason Condition" means that any of the following are undertaken without Executive's express written consent: (i) a material diminution in Executive's authority, duties, or responsibilities which substantially reduces the nature or character of Executive's position with the Company; (ii) a material reduction by the Company of Executive's base salary as in effect immediately prior to such reduction; (iii) a relocation of Executive's principal office to a location more than fifty (50) miles from the location of Executive's principal office as of immediately prior to such relocation, except for required travel by Executive on the Company's business or (iv) any material breach by the Company of any provision of Executive's employment agreement or offer letter agreement which the Company does not cure within 30 days following written notice thereof from Executive. For clarity, the relocation of Executive's principal office to the San Francisco Bay Area two or more years after the Effective Date shall not be deemed a Good Reason Condition.

(g) Involuntary Termination Without Cause. "Involuntary Termination Without Cause" means Executive's dismissal or discharge by the Company other than for Cause. The termination of Executive's employment as a result of Executive's death or inability to perform the essential functions of his job due to disability will not be deemed to be an Involuntary Termination Without Cause.

(h) Separation from Service. "Separation from Service" means Executive's termination of employment or service constitutes a "separation from service" within the meaning of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(h).

(i) Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason. “Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason” means Executive’s resignation as a result of a Good Reason Condition in accordance with this subsection (i). In order for a resignation to constitute a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason, Executive must provide written notice to the Company of the existence of the Good Reason Condition within thirty (30) days of the initial existence of such Good Reason Condition. Upon receipt of such notice of the Good Reason Condition, the Company will be provided with a period of thirty (30) days during which it may remedy the Good Reason Condition and not be required to provide for the payments and benefits described in Sections 4 or 5 as a result of such proposed resignation due to the Good Reason Condition specified in the notice. If the Good Reason Condition is not remedied within the period specified in the preceding sentence, Executive may resign for Good Reason based on the Good Reason Condition specified in the notice, provided that such resignation must occur within sixty (60) days after the initial existence of such Good Reason Condition.

9. Successors.

(a) Company’s Successors. Any successor to the Company (whether direct or indirect and whether by purchase, merger, consolidation, liquidation or otherwise) to all or substantially all of the Company’s business and/or assets shall assume the obligations under this Agreement and agree expressly to perform the obligations under this Agreement in the same manner and to the same extent as the Company would be required to perform such obligations in the absence of a succession. For all purposes under this Agreement, the term “Company” shall include any successor to the Company’s business and/or assets which executes and delivers the assumption agreement described in this Section 9 (a) or which becomes bound by the terms of this Agreement by operation of law.

(b) Executive’s Successors. The terms of this Agreement and all rights of Executive hereunder shall inure to the benefit of, and be enforceable by, Executive’s personal or legal representatives, executors, administrators, successors, heirs, distributees, devisees and legatees.

10. Notices. Notices and all other communications contemplated by this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given when personally delivered or one day following mailing via Federal Express or similar overnight courier service. In the case of Executive, mailed notices shall be addressed to Executive at Executive’s home address that the Company has on file for Executive. In the case of the Company, mailed notices shall be addressed to its primary office location, and all notices shall be directed to the attention of its Vice President, General Counsel.

11. Confidentiality; Non-Solicitation.

(a) Confidentiality. While Executive is employed by the Company, and thereafter, Executive shall not directly or indirectly disclose or make available to any person, firm, corporation, association or other entity for any reason or purpose whatsoever, any Confidential Information (as defined below). Upon termination of Executive’s employment with the Company, all Confidential Information in Executive’s possession that is in written or other tangible form (together with all copies or duplicates thereof, including computer files) shall be returned to the

Company and shall not be retained by Executive or furnished to any third party, in any form except as provided herein; *provided, however*, that Executive shall not be obligated to treat as confidential, or return to the Company copies of any Confidential Information that (i) was publicly known at the time of disclosure to Executive, (ii) becomes publicly known or available thereafter other than by any means in violation of this Agreement or any other duty owed to the Company by any person or entity, or (iii) is lawfully disclosed to Executive by a third party. For purposes of this Agreement, the term “Confidential Information” shall mean information disclosed to Executive or known by Executive as a consequence of or through his or her relationship with the Company, about the customers, employees, business methods, public relations methods, organization, procedures or finances, including, without limitation, information of or relating to customer lists, of the Company and its affiliates. In addition, Executive shall continue to be subject to the Proprietary Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement entered into between Executive and the Company (the “Confidential Information Agreement”).

(b) Non-Solicitation. In addition to Executive’s obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement, Executive shall not for a period of two (2) years following Executive’s termination of employment for any reason, either on Executive’s own account or jointly with or as a manager, agent, officer, employee, consultant, partner, joint venturer, owner or stockholder or otherwise on behalf of any other person, firm or corporation, directly or indirectly solicit or attempt to solicit away from the Company any of its officers or employees or offer employment to any person who is an officer or employee of the Company; *provided, however*, that a general advertisement to which an employee of the Company responds shall in no event be deemed to result in a breach of this Section 11(b). Executive also agrees not to harass or disparage the Company or its employees, clients, directors or agents or divert or attempt to divert any actual or potential business of the Company.

(c) Survival of Provisions. The provisions of this Section 11 shall survive the termination or expiration of the applicable Executive’s employment with the Company and shall be fully enforceable thereafter. If it is determined by a court of competent jurisdiction in any state that any restriction in this Section 11 is excessive in duration or scope or is unreasonable or unenforceable under the laws of that state, it is the intention of the parties that such restriction may be modified or amended by the court to render it enforceable to the maximum extent permitted by the law of that state.

12. Dispute Resolution. To ensure the timely and economical resolution of disputes that arise in connection with this Agreement, Executive and the Company agree that any and all disputes, claims, or causes of action arising from or relating to the enforcement, breach, performance or interpretation of this Agreement, Executive’s employment, or the termination of Executive’s employment, shall be resolved to the fullest extent permitted by law by final, binding and confidential arbitration, by a single arbitrator, in Alameda County, California, conducted by Judicial Arbitration and Mediation Services, Inc. (“JAMS”) under the applicable JAMS employment rules. **By agreeing to this arbitration procedure, both Executive and the Company waive the right to resolve any such dispute through a trial by jury or judge or administrative proceeding.** The arbitrator shall: (i) have the authority to compel adequate discovery for the resolution of the dispute and to award such relief as would otherwise be permitted by law; and (ii) issue a written arbitration decision, to include the arbitrator’s essential findings and conclusions and a statement of the award.

The arbitrator shall be authorized to award any or all remedies that Executive or the Company would be entitled to seek in a court of law. The Company shall pay all JAMS' arbitration fees in excess of the amount of court fees that would be required if the dispute were decided in a court of law. Nothing in this Agreement is intended to prevent either Executive or the Company from obtaining injunctive relief in court to prevent irreparable harm pending the conclusion of any such arbitration. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive and the Company each have the right to resolve any issue or dispute over intellectual property rights by Court action instead of arbitration.

13. Miscellaneous Provisions.

(a) Section 409A.

(i) Separation from Service. Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, no amount deemed deferred compensation subject to Section 409A of the Code shall be payable pursuant to Section 4 unless Executive's termination of employment constitutes a Separation from Service and, except as provided under Section 13 (a)(ii) of this Agreement, any such amount shall not be paid, or in the case of installments, commence payment, until the sixtieth (60th) day following Executive's Separation from Service. Any installment payments that would have been made to Executive during the sixty (60) day period immediately following Executive's Separation from Service but for the preceding sentence shall be paid to Executive on the sixtieth (60th) day following Executive's Separation from Service and the remaining payments shall be made as provided in this Agreement.

(ii) Specified Employee. Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, if Executive is deemed at the time of his separation from service to be a "specified employee" for purposes of Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, to the extent delayed commencement of any portion of the benefits to which Executive is entitled under this Agreement is required in order to avoid a prohibited distribution under Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, such portion of Executive's benefits shall not be provided to Executive prior to the earlier of (a) the expiration of the six (6)-month period measured from the date of the Executive's Separation from Service or (b) the date of Executive's death. Upon the first business day following the expiration of the applicable Code Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) period, all payments deferred pursuant to this Section 13(a)(ii) shall be paid in a lump sum to Executive, and any remaining payments due under this Agreement shall be paid as otherwise provided herein.

(iii) Expense Reimbursements. To the extent that any reimbursements payable pursuant to this Agreement are subject to the provisions of Section 409A of the Code, any such reimbursements payable to Executive pursuant to this Agreement shall be paid to Executive no later than December 31 of the year following the year in which the expense was incurred, the amount of expenses reimbursed in one year shall not affect the amount eligible for reimbursement in any subsequent year, and Executive's right to reimbursement under this Agreement will not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit.

(iv) Installments. For purposes of Section 409A of the Code (including, without limitation, for purposes of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-2(b)(2)(iii)), Executive's right to receive any installment payments under this Agreement shall be treated as a right to receive a series of separate payments and, accordingly, each such installment payment shall at all times be considered a separate and distinct payment.

(b) Waiver. No provision of this Agreement shall be modified, waived or discharged unless the modification, waiver or discharge is agreed to in writing and signed by Executive and by an authorized officer of the Company (other than Executive). No waiver by either party of any breach of, or of compliance with, any condition or provision of this Agreement by the other party shall be considered a waiver of any other condition or provision or of the same condition or provision at another time.

(c) Whole Agreement. This Agreement and the Confidential Information Agreement represent the entire understanding of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersede all prior arrangements and understandings regarding same.

(d) Choice of Law. The validity, interpretation, construction and performance of this Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California.

(e) Severability. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision or provisions of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision hereof, which shall remain in full force and effect.

(f) Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together will constitute one and the same instrument.

(Signature page follows)

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, each of the parties has executed this Agreement, in the case of the Company by its duly authorized officer, as of the day and year set forth below.

ARDELYX, INC.

By: /s/ Mike Raab
Mike Raab

Title: CEO

Date: 1/4/2016

EXECUTIVE

By: /s/ Paul Komer
Paul Komer, MD, MBA

Date: 1/4/2016



34175 Ardenwood Blvd
Fremont, CA 94555
(510) 745-1700 – Tele
(510) 745-0493 – Fax
www.ardelyx.com

October 1, 2016

Reginald Kim Seeto, MB.BS; B.Sc.

Dear Reg:

On behalf of Ardelyx (the “Company”), I am pleased to offer you employment in the exempt position of Executive Vice President and Chief Operating Officer reporting to the Chief Executive Officer. This letter sets out the terms of Ardelyx’s offer of employment, which is contingent upon the completion of reference checks to Ardelyx’s satisfaction. If you accept this offer, you will be required to execute the Company’s standard form of employee non-disclosure and assignment of inventions agreement. In addition, you and the Company will enter into a Change in Control Severance Agreement that will further define some of the provisions set forth in this offer letter (the “Severance Agreement”).

Your first day of full time employment with Ardelyx will be on or before October 22, 2016. Your full time starting base salary will be \$17,708.33 semi-monthly, which is equivalent to \$425,000.00 per year, less applicable tax and other withholdings in accordance with the Company’s normal payroll procedure. You will also be eligible to receive an annual bonus of up to forty-five percent (45%) of your base salary, with the amount of the bonus determined by the Board of Directors based on your performance as well as the performance of the Company. For the calendar year 2016, your bonus will be pro-rated and will be equal to one-quarter of the annual bonus that you would have been entitled to receive if you have been employed with the Company for all of 2016.

In addition, you will receive a signing bonus equal to \$250,000 to be paid in full on or before your fifth day of employment. This signing bonus will be subject to the terms and conditions of the Severance Agreement, which shall provide for your reimbursement of the applicable portion of the signing bonus to the Company in the event that you terminate your employment with the Company without good reason or the Company terminates your employment for cause, in either case, on or before the first anniversary of your commencement of employment (one hundred percent (100%) to be reimbursed) or during the period between the first and second anniversaries of the commencement of your employment (fifty percent (50%) to be reimbursed).

In the event that you elect to relocate your primary residence to the San Francisco Bay Area within two (2) years of your first day of employment, Ardelyx will pay you a relocation allowance equal to \$225,000 (grossed up for applicable withholding taxes) within thirty (30) days of relocation.

On your first day of employment, you will be granted an option to purchase shares of Company common stock under the Company’s equity incentive plan which stock option shall have an accounting grant date fair value of \$1.5 million. Your option will be exercisable at per share exercise price equal to the fair market value of Ardelyx stock on your option grant date. Your option will vest over a period of 4 years, with 25% of the shares vesting at the end of your first year of employment, and the remainder vesting monthly over the following three years, and will be subject to the terms and conditions of the Company’s equity incentive plan and standard form of stock option agreement, which you will be required to sign as a condition of receiving the option.

In addition, on your first day of employment, you will be granted a Restricted Stock Unit (RSU) for such number of shares as is equal to \$1.5 million in full value on the date of grant. The RSU will vest over four years in four equal installments on the annual anniversary of the date of grant, and will be subject to the terms and conditions of the Company's equity incentive plan and standard form of full value award, which you will be required to sign as a condition of receiving the RSU.

You will be eligible to participate in various Company equity and benefit plans, including group health insurance, 401(k), and the Employee Stock Purchase Plan. Specifically, you will be eligible to receive an equity grant in 2017 in connection with the Company's annual compensation review, and that grant will be pro-rated and equal to one-quarter of the grant that you would have been eligible to receive had you been employed with the Company throughout all of 2016, up to a maximum of \$500,000. You will earn three weeks of vacation each year.

If this offer of employment is accepted, your employment with the Company will be "at will." This means it is for no specified term and may be terminated by you or the Company at any time, with or without cause or advance notice. In addition, the Company reserves the right to modify your compensation, position, duties or reporting relationship to meet business needs and to decide on appropriate discipline. The Severance Agreement will provide, subject to the terms and conditions thereof, for (i) nine month salary continuation and the payment of healthcare continuation costs for twelve months, if you terminate your employment for good reason or you are terminated without cause, in either case, outside of a change of control period, and (ii) a lump sum payment equal to 100% of the sum of your base salary and your target annual bonus for the year of termination; the payment of healthcare continuation costs for 12 months; and the vesting of 100% of your unvested stock options or RSUs, if you terminate your employment for good reason or you are terminated without cause, in either case during a change of control period.

In the event of any dispute or claim relating to or arising out of your employment relationship with the Company, this agreement, or the termination of your employment with the Company for any reason (including, but not limited to, any claims of breach of contract, defamation, wrongful termination or age, sex, sexual orientation, race, color, national origin, ancestry, marital status, religious creed, physical or mental disability or medical condition or other discrimination, retaliation or harassment), you and the Company agree that all such disputes shall be fully resolved by confidential, binding arbitration conducted by a single arbitrator through the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") under the AAA's National Rules for the Resolution of Employment Disputes then in effect, which are available online at the AAA's website at www.adr.org. You and the Company hereby waive your respective rights to have any such disputes or claims tried before a judge or jury.

Please sign and date this letter on the spaces provided below to acknowledge your acceptance of the terms of this agreement and return it to me prior to or on 5:00 pm EST, October 5, 2016 at which time this offer shall expire

Reg, it has been a real pleasure meeting you and all of us here at Ardelyx concur that you are an excellent fit with our team, and we look forward to working with you at Ardelyx.

Sincerely,

Ardelyx, Inc.

By /s/ Mike Raab

Mike Raab

President and Chief Executive Officer

I agree to and accept employment with Ardelyx on the terms and conditions set forth in this agreement. I understand and agree that my employment with the Company is at-will.

Date: October 5, 2016

/s/ Reginald Kim Seeto
Reginald Kim Seeto

Tentative Start Date: October 22, 2016

ARDELYX, INC.

CHANGE IN CONTROL SEVERANCE AGREEMENT

This Change in Control Severance Agreement (the "Agreement") is made and entered into by and between Reginald Kim Seeto, MB.BS; B.Sc (the "Executive") and Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company"), effective as October 22, 2016 (the "Effective Date").

RECITALS

A. It is expected that the Company from time to time will consider the possibility of an acquisition by another company or other change in control. The Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board") recognizes that such consideration as well as the possibility of an involuntary termination or reduction in responsibility can be a distraction to Executive and can cause Executive to consider alternative employment opportunities. The Board has determined that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to assure that the Company will have the continued dedication and objectivity of Executive, notwithstanding the possibility, threat or occurrence of such an event.

B. The Board believes that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to provide Executive with an incentive to continue Executive's employment and to motivate Executive to maximize the value of the Company upon a Change in Control (as defined below) for the benefit of its stockholders.

C. The Board believes that it is imperative to provide Executive with severance benefits upon certain terminations of Executive's service to the Company that enhance Executive's financial security and provide incentive and encouragement to Executive to remain with the Company notwithstanding the possibility of such an event.

D. The Board believes that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to provide Executive with certain transition payments as an incentive to join the Company.

E. Certain capitalized terms used in this Agreement are defined in Section 8 below.

The parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Term of Agreement. This Agreement shall become effective as of the Effective Date and terminate upon the date that all obligations of the parties hereto with respect to this Agreement have been satisfied.

2. Signing Bonus and Relocation Bonus. The Company shall pay the Executive a signing bonus in the amount of two hundred fifty thousand dollars (\$250,000) (the "Signing Bonus") in a single cash lump sum, less required withholding obligations, on or before Executive's fifth day of employment with the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive acknowledges and agrees that the Signing Bonus shall not be earned to any extent prior to the first anniversary of the commencement of Executive's employment, shall be earned only with respect to 50% of the Signing

Bonus on the first anniversary of Executive's commencement of employment if Executive remains continuously employed with the Company through such date and shall only be fully earned on the second anniversary of Executive's commencement of employment if Executive remains continuously employed with the Company through such date. If the Executive's employment with the Company terminates prior to the second anniversary of Executive's commencement of employment with the Company and such termination does not constitute a Covered Termination, then the Executive shall repay to the Company the portion of the Signing Bonus that is not earned prior to the date of termination.

The Company and Executive acknowledge and agree that the Executive will relocate his permanent residence to the San Francisco Bay Area within two (2) years of the Effective Date. Provided that the Executive has relocated to the Bay Area within such two year period, the Company will pay the Executive a relocation allowance equal to three hundred thirty seven thousand dollars (\$337,000) within thirty (30) days of relocation.

3. At-Will Employment. The Company and Executive acknowledge that Executive's employment is and shall continue to be "at-will," as defined under applicable law. If Executive's employment terminates for any reason, Executive shall not be entitled to any payments, benefits, damages, awards or compensation other than as provided by this Agreement.

4. Covered Termination Other Than During a Change in Control Period. If Executive experiences a Covered Termination other than during a Change in Control Period, and if Executive delivers to the Company a general release of all claims against the Company and its affiliates in a form acceptable to the Company (a "Release of Claims") that becomes effective and irrevocable within sixty (60) days, or such shorter period of time specified by the Company, following such Covered Termination, then in addition to any accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement payable in accordance with applicable law, the Company shall provide Executive with the following:

(a) Severance. Executive shall be entitled to receive an amount equal to nine (9) months of Executive's Base Salary payable in substantially equal installments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll policies, less applicable withholdings, with such installments to commence as soon as administratively practicable following the date the Release of Claims is not subject to revocation and, in any event, within sixty (60) days following the date of the Covered Termination.

(b) Continued Healthcare. If Executive elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the provisions of the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended ("COBRA"), the Company shall directly pay, or reimburse Executive for, the premium for Executive and Executive's covered dependents through the earlier of (i) the first (1st) anniversary of the date of Executive's termination of employment and (ii) the date Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise

unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 4 (b), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

5. Covered Termination During a Change in Control Period. If Executive experiences a Covered Termination during a Change in Control Period, and if Executive delivers to the Company a Release of Claims that becomes effective and irrevocable within sixty (60) days, or such shorter period of time specified by the Company, following such Covered Termination, then in addition to any accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement payable in accordance with applicable law, the Company shall provide Executive with the following:

(a) Severance. Executive shall be entitled to receive an amount equal to one hundred percent of the sum of: (i) Executive's Base Salary and (ii) Executive's target annual bonus for the fiscal year of Executive's termination, in each case, at the rate in effect immediately prior to Executive's termination of employment payable in a cash lump sum, less applicable withholdings, as soon as administratively practicable following the date the Release of Claims is not subject to revocation and, in any event, within sixty (60) days following the date of the Covered Termination.

(b) Equity Awards. Each outstanding equity award, including, without limitation, each stock option and restricted stock award, held by Executive shall automatically become vested and, if applicable, exercisable and any forfeiture restrictions or rights of repurchase thereon shall immediately lapse, in each case, with respect to one hundred percent (100%) of the shares subject thereto. To the extent vested after giving effect to the acceleration provided in the preceding sentence, each stock option held by Executive shall remain exercisable until the earlier of the original expiration date for such stock option or the first anniversary of Executive's Covered Termination.

(c) Continued Healthcare. If Executive elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the provisions of COBRA, the Company shall directly pay, or reimburse Executive for, the premium for Executive and Executive's covered dependents through the earlier of (i) the first (1st) anniversary of the date of Executive's termination of employment and (ii) the date Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 5(c), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

6. Other Terminations. If Executive's service with the Company is terminated by the Company or by Executive for any or no reason other than as a Covered Termination, then Executive shall not be entitled to any benefits hereunder other than accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement in accordance with applicable law and to elect any continued healthcare coverage as may be required under COBRA or similar state law.

7. Limitation on Payments. Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, if any payment or distribution Executive would receive pursuant to this Agreement or otherwise ("Payment") would (a) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and (b) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall either be (i) delivered in full, or (ii) delivered as to such lesser extent which would result in no portion of such Payment being subject to the Excise Tax, whichever of the foregoing amounts, taking into account the applicable federal, state and local income taxes and the Excise Tax, results in the receipt by Executive on an after-tax basis, of the largest payment, notwithstanding that all or some portion the Payment may be taxable under Section 4999 of the Code. The accounting firm engaged by the Company for general audit purposes as of the day prior to the effective date of the Change in Control shall perform the foregoing calculations. The Company shall bear all expenses with respect to the determinations by such accounting firm required to be made hereunder. The accounting firm shall provide its calculations to the Company and Executive within fifteen (15) calendar days after the date on which Executive's right to a Payment is triggered (if requested at that time by the Company or Executive) or such other time as requested by the Company or Executive. Any good faith determinations of the accounting firm made hereunder shall be final, binding and conclusive upon the Company and Executive. Any reduction in payments and/or benefits pursuant to this Section 7 will occur in the following order: (1) reduction of cash payments; (2) cancellation of accelerated vesting of equity awards other than stock options; (3) cancellation of accelerated vesting of stock options; and (4) reduction of other benefits payable to Executive.

8. Definition of Terms. The following terms referred to in this Agreement shall have the following meanings:

(a) Base Salary. "Base Salary" means Executive's annual base salary in effect immediately prior to Executive's termination (disregarding any reduction in base salary that would give rise to Executive's right to a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason).

(b) Cause. "Cause" means (i) Executive's theft, dishonesty or falsification of any employment or Company records that is non-trivial in nature; (ii) Executive's malicious or reckless disclosure of the Company's confidential or proprietary information or any material breach by Executive of his or her obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement (as defined below); (iii) the conviction of the Executive of a felony (excluding motor vehicle violations) or the commission of gross negligence or willful misconduct, where a majority of the non-employee members of the Board reasonably determines that such act or misconduct has (A) seriously undermined the ability of the Board or management of the Company to entrust Executive with

important matters or otherwise work effectively with Executive, (B) substantially contributed to the Company's loss of significant revenues or business opportunities, or (C) significantly and detrimentally affected the business or reputation of the Company or any of its subsidiaries; and/or (iv) the willful failure or refusal by Executive to follow the reasonable and lawful directives of the Board or Executive's direct supervisor, provided such willful failure or refusal continues after Executive's receipt of reasonable notice in writing of such failure or refusal and a reasonable opportunity of not less than 30 days to correct the problem. For the purpose of this Agreement, no act, or failure to act, shall be considered "willful" unless undertaken by Executive with an absence of good faith that this act, or failure to act, was in the best interests of the Company.

(c) Change in Control. "Change in Control" shall have the meaning set forth in the Company's 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan, as it may be amended from time to time, provided that such event must also constitute a "change in control event" as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5).

(d) Change in Control Period. "Change in Control Period" means the period of time beginning three (3) months prior to and ending twelve (12) months following a Change in Control.

(e) Covered Termination. "Covered Termination" means (a) an Involuntary Termination Without Cause or (b) a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason, provided that such termination or resignation constitutes a Separation from Service.

(f) Good Reason Condition. "Good Reason Condition" means that any of the following are undertaken without Executive's express written consent: (i) a material diminution in Executive's authority, duties, or responsibilities which substantially reduces the nature or character of Executive's position with the Company; (ii) a material reduction by the Company of Executive's base salary as in effect immediately prior to such reduction; (iii) a relocation of Executive's principal office to a location more than fifty (50) miles from the location of Executive's principal office as of immediately prior to such relocation, except for required travel by Executive on the Company's business or (iv) any material breach by the Company of any provision of Executive's employment agreement or offer letter agreement which the Company does not cure within 30 days following written notice thereof from Executive. For clarity, the relocation of Executive's principal office to the San Francisco Bay Area two or more years after the Effective Date shall not be deemed a Good Reason Condition.

(g) Involuntary Termination Without Cause. "Involuntary Termination Without Cause" means Executive's dismissal or discharge by the Company other than for Cause. The termination of Executive's employment as a result of Executive's death or inability to perform the essential functions of his job due to disability will not be deemed to be an Involuntary Termination Without Cause.

(h) Separation from Service. "Separation from Service" means Executive's termination of employment or service constitutes a "separation from service" within the meaning of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(h).

(i) Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason. “Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason” means Executive’s resignation as a result of a Good Reason Condition in accordance with this subsection (i). In order for a resignation to constitute a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason, Executive must provide written notice to the Company of the existence of the Good Reason Condition within thirty (30) days of the initial existence of such Good Reason Condition. Upon receipt of such notice of the Good Reason Condition, the Company will be provided with a period of thirty (30) days during which it may remedy the Good Reason Condition and not be required to provide for the payments and benefits described in Sections 4 or 5 as a result of such proposed resignation due to the Good Reason Condition specified in the notice. If the Good Reason Condition is not remedied within the period specified in the preceding sentence, Executive may resign for Good Reason based on the Good Reason Condition specified in the notice, provided that such resignation must occur within sixty (60) days after the initial existence of such Good Reason Condition.

9. Successors.

(a) Company’s Successors. Any successor to the Company (whether direct or indirect and whether by purchase, merger, consolidation, liquidation or otherwise) to all or substantially all of the Company’s business and/or assets shall assume the obligations under this Agreement and agree expressly to perform the obligations under this Agreement in the same manner and to the same extent as the Company would be required to perform such obligations in the absence of a succession. For all purposes under this Agreement, the term “Company” shall include any successor to the Company’s business and/or assets which executes and delivers the assumption agreement described in this Section 9 (a) or which becomes bound by the terms of this Agreement by operation of law.

(b) Executive’s Successors. The terms of this Agreement and all rights of Executive hereunder shall inure to the benefit of, and be enforceable by, Executive’s personal or legal representatives, executors, administrators, successors, heirs, distributees, devisees and legatees.

10. Notices. Notices and all other communications contemplated by this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given when personally delivered or one day following mailing via Federal Express or similar overnight courier service. In the case of Executive, mailed notices shall be addressed to Executive at Executive’s home address that the Company has on file for Executive. In the case of the Company, mailed notices shall be addressed to its primary office location, and all notices shall be directed to the attention of its Vice President, General Counsel.

11. Confidentiality; Non-Solicitation.

(a) Confidentiality. While Executive is employed by the Company, and thereafter, Executive shall not directly or indirectly disclose or make available to any person, firm, corporation, association or other entity for any reason or purpose whatsoever, any Confidential Information (as defined below). Upon termination of Executive’s employment with the Company, all Confidential Information in Executive’s possession that is in written or other tangible form (together with all copies or duplicates thereof, including computer files) shall be returned to the

Company and shall not be retained by Executive or furnished to any third party, in any form except as provided herein; *provided, however*, that Executive shall not be obligated to treat as confidential, or return to the Company copies of any Confidential Information that (i) was publicly known at the time of disclosure to Executive, (ii) becomes publicly known or available thereafter other than by any means in violation of this Agreement or any other duty owed to the Company by any person or entity, or (iii) is lawfully disclosed to Executive by a third party. For purposes of this Agreement, the term “Confidential Information” shall mean information disclosed to Executive or known by Executive as a consequence of or through his or her relationship with the Company, about the customers, employees, business methods, public relations methods, organization, procedures or finances, including, without limitation, information of or relating to customer lists, of the Company and its affiliates. In addition, Executive shall continue to be subject to the Proprietary Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement entered into between Executive and the Company (the “Confidential Information Agreement”).

(b) Non-Solicitation. In addition to Executive’s obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement, Executive shall not for a period of two (2) years following Executive’s termination of employment for any reason, either on Executive’s own account or jointly with or as a manager, agent, officer, employee, consultant, partner, joint venturer, owner or stockholder or otherwise on behalf of any other person, firm or corporation, directly or indirectly solicit or attempt to solicit away from the Company any of its officers or employees or offer employment to any person who is an officer or employee of the Company; *provided, however*, that a general advertisement to which an employee of the Company responds shall in no event be deemed to result in a breach of this Section 11(b). Executive also agrees not to harass or disparage the Company or its employees, clients, directors or agents or divert or attempt to divert any actual or potential business of the Company.

(c) Survival of Provisions. The provisions of this Section 11 shall survive the termination or expiration of the applicable Executive’s employment with the Company and shall be fully enforceable thereafter. If it is determined by a court of competent jurisdiction in any state that any restriction in this Section 11 is excessive in duration or scope or is unreasonable or unenforceable under the laws of that state, it is the intention of the parties that such restriction may be modified or amended by the court to render it enforceable to the maximum extent permitted by the law of that state.

12. Dispute Resolution. To ensure the timely and economical resolution of disputes that arise in connection with this Agreement, Executive and the Company agree that any and all disputes, claims, or causes of action arising from or relating to the enforcement, breach, performance or interpretation of this Agreement, Executive’s employment, or the termination of Executive’s employment, shall be resolved to the fullest extent permitted by law by final, binding and, by a single arbitrator, in Alameda County, California, conducted by Judicial Arbitration and Mediation Services, Inc. (“JAMS”) under the applicable JAMS employment rules. **By agreeing to this arbitration procedure, both Executive and the Company waive the right to resolve any such dispute through a trial by jury or judge or administrative proceeding.** The arbitrator shall: (i) have the authority to compel adequate discovery for the resolution of the dispute and to award such relief as would otherwise be permitted by law; and (ii) issue a written arbitration decision, to include the arbitrator’s essential findings and conclusions and a statement of the award.

The arbitrator shall be authorized to award any or all remedies that Executive or the Company would be entitled to seek in a court of law. The Company shall pay all JAMS' arbitration fees in excess of the amount of court fees that would be required if the dispute were decided in a court of law. Nothing in this Agreement is intended to prevent either Executive or the Company from obtaining injunctive relief in court to prevent irreparable harm pending the conclusion of any such arbitration. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive and the Company each have the right to resolve any issue or dispute over intellectual property rights by Court action instead of arbitration.

13. Miscellaneous Provisions.

(a) Section 409A.

(i) Separation from Service. Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, no amount deemed deferred compensation subject to Section 409A of the Code shall be payable pursuant to Section 4 unless Executive's termination of employment constitutes a Separation from Service and, except as provided under Section 13 (a)(ii) of this Agreement, any such amount shall not be paid, or in the case of installments, commence payment, until the sixtieth (60th) day following Executive's Separation from Service. Any installment payments that would have been made to Executive during the sixty (60) day period immediately following Executive's Separation from Service but for the preceding sentence shall be paid to Executive on the sixtieth (60th) day following Executive's Separation from Service and the remaining payments shall be made as provided in this Agreement.

(ii) Specified Employee. Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, if Executive is deemed at the time of his separation from service to be a "specified employee" for purposes of Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, to the extent delayed commencement of any portion of the benefits to which Executive is entitled under this Agreement is required in order to avoid a prohibited distribution under Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, such portion of Executive's benefits shall not be provided to Executive prior to the earlier of (a) the expiration of the six (6)-month period measured from the date of the Executive's Separation from Service or (b) the date of Executive's death. Upon the first business day following the expiration of the applicable Code Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) period, all payments deferred pursuant to this Section 13(a)(ii) shall be paid in a lump sum to Executive, and any remaining payments due under this Agreement shall be paid as otherwise provided herein.

(iii) Expense Reimbursements. To the extent that any reimbursements payable pursuant to this Agreement are subject to the provisions of Section 409A of the Code, any such reimbursements payable to Executive pursuant to this Agreement shall be paid to Executive no later than December 31 of the year following the year in which the expense was incurred, the amount of expenses reimbursed in one year shall not affect the amount eligible for reimbursement in any subsequent year, and Executive's right to reimbursement under this Agreement will not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit.

(iv) Installments. For purposes of Section 409A of the Code (including, without limitation, for purposes of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-2(b)(2)(iii)), Executive's right to receive any installment payments under this Agreement shall be treated as a right to receive a series of separate payments and, accordingly, each such installment payment shall at all times be considered a separate and distinct payment.

(b) Waiver. No provision of this Agreement shall be modified, waived or discharged unless the modification, waiver or discharge is agreed to in writing and signed by Executive and by an authorized officer of the Company (other than Executive). No waiver by either party of any breach of, or of compliance with, any condition or provision of this Agreement by the other party shall be considered a waiver of any other condition or provision or of the same condition or provision at another time.

(c) Whole Agreement. This Agreement and the Confidential Information Agreement represent the entire understanding of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersede all prior arrangements and understandings regarding same.

(d) Choice of Law. The validity, interpretation, construction and performance of this Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California.

(e) Severability. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision or provisions of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision hereof, which shall remain in full force and effect.

(f) Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together will constitute one and the same instrument.

(Signature page follows)

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, each of the parties has executed this Agreement, in the case of the Company by its duly authorized officer, as of the day and year set forth below.

ARDELYX, INC.

By: /s/ Mike Raab
Mike Raab

Title: CEO

Date: February 2, 2017

EXECUTIVE

By: /s/ Reginald Kim Seeto
Reginald Kim Seeto, MB.BS; B.Sc.

Date: February 2, 2017



34175 Ardenwood Blvd
Fremont, CA 94555
(510) 745-1700 – Tele
(510) 745-0493 – Fax
www.ardelyx.com

November 15, 2016

Bryan Shaw
PO Box 2898
Santa Clara, CA 95055

Dear Bryan:

On behalf of Ardeyx (the “Company”), I am pleased to offer you employment in the exempt position of Vice President, Corporate Controller reporting to Mark Kaufmann, Chief Financial Officer. This letter sets out the terms of your offer of employment with the Company.

Your first day of full-time employment with Ardeyx is Monday November 21, 2016. Your salary for this position will be \$10,208.34 per pay period (equivalent to \$245,000.00 on an annualized basis), less applicable taxes and other withholdings in accordance with the Company’s normal payroll procedure.

You will be eligible to participate in various Company equity and benefit plans, including group health insurance, 401(k), and the Employee Stock Purchase Plan. You will earn three weeks of vacation each year. As a Vice President of the Company, you will also receive the change in control and severance benefits available to all Vice Presidents, and a Change in Control Severance Agreement (the “Severance Agreement”) will be provided to you for signature after your first day of employment. The agreement provides benefits in the event of the termination of your employment under certain conditions, including the continuation of your base salary and COBRA healthcare coverage for six (6) months in the event of a covered termination not associated with a change of control, and the payment of a lump sum equal to 75% of the sum of your base salary and your target bonus in the event of a covered termination associated with a change of control, in either case, less applicable withholding. Additional benefits triggered with a covered termination associated with a change of control includes accelerated vesting of your unvested shares, and nine (9) months of COBRA healthcare coverage.

In addition, you will be eligible to participate in our annual bonus plan. This bonus will be awarded at the discretion of the Board of Directors and based on both individual and Company performance. The target bonus for this position is 25% of base salary. This bonus is discretionary and the business and individual objectives are set by you and your manager. For calendar year 2016, your bonus will be pro-rated to reflect your start date as a consultant with Ardeyx in April, 2016.

Subject to the approval of the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors, you will be granted an option to purchase shares of Company common stock under the Company's equity incentive plan which stock option shall have an accounting grant date fair value of \$350,000.00. Your option will be exercisable at the per share exercise price equal to the fair market value of Ardelyx stock on your option grant date. Your option will vest over a period of 4 years, with 25% of the shares vesting at the end of your first year of employment, and the remainder vesting monthly over the following three years. and will be subject to the terms and conditions of the Company's equity incentive plan and standard form of stock option agreement, which you will be required to sign as a condition of receiving the option.

Your employment with the Company is "at will." This means it is for no specified term and may be terminated by you or the Company at any time, with or without cause or advance notice. In addition, the Company reserves the right to modify your compensation, position, duties or reporting relationship to meet business needs and to decide on appropriate discipline. Please note that this employment offer is contingent upon a successful completion of a background check paid for by the company. Negative information may result in the rescission of this offer.

As a condition of your employment, you will be required to sign the Company's standard form of employee nondisclosure and assignment agreement (a copy of which is enclosed). Last, you will need to provide the Company with documents establishing your identity and right to work in the United States. Those documents must be provided to the Company within three business days of your employment start date.

In the event of any dispute or claim relating to or arising out of your employment relationship with the Company, this agreement, or the termination of your employment with the Company for any reason (including, but not limited to, any claims of breach of contract, defamation, wrongful termination or age, sex, sexual orientation, race, color, national origin, ancestry, marital status, religious creed, physical or mental disability or medical condition or other discrimination, retaliation or harassment), you and the Company agree that all such disputes shall be fully resolved by confidential, binding arbitration conducted by a single arbitrator through the American Arbitration Association ("AAA") under the AAA's National Rules for the Resolution of Employment Disputes then in effect, which are available online at the AAA's website at www.adr.org. You and the Company hereby waive your respective rights to have any such disputes or claims tried before a judge or jury.

This agreement, the non-disclosure, the Severance Agreement and stock option agreement referred to above constitute the entire agreement between you and the Company regarding the terms and conditions of your employment, and they supersede all prior or contemporaneous negotiations, representations or agreements between you and the Company. The provisions of this agreement regarding "at will" employment and arbitration may only be modified by a document signed by you and an authorized representative of the Company.

Please sign and date this letter on the spaces provided below to acknowledge your acceptance of the terms of this agreement and return it to Jodi Fraser, Sr. Director, Human Resources (jfraser@ardelyx.com) close of business on Wednesday, November 16, 2016, at which time this offer shall expire.

Bryan, it has been a real pleasure meeting you and all of us here at Ardelyx concur that you are an excellent fit with our team, and we look forward to working with you at Ardelyx.

Sincerely,

Ardelyx, Inc.

By /s/ Mike Raab

Mike Raab

President and Chief Executive Officer

I agree to and accept employment with Ardelyx on the terms and conditions set forth in this agreement. I understand and agree that my employment with the Company is at-will.

Date: November 15, 2016

/s/ Bryan Shaw

Bryan Shaw

Start Date: November 21, 2016

ARDELYX, INC.

CHANGE IN CONTROL SEVERANCE AGREEMENT

This Change in Control Severance Agreement (the "Agreement") is made and entered into by and between Bryan Shaw (the "Executive") and Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company"), effective as of the 6th day of December 2016 (the "Effective Date").

RECITALS

A. It is expected that the Company from time to time will consider the possibility of an acquisition by another company or other change in control. The Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board") recognizes that such consideration as well as the possibility of an involuntary termination or reduction in responsibility can be a distraction to Executive and can cause Executive to consider alternative employment opportunities. The Board has determined that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to assure that the Company will have the continued dedication and objectivity of Executive, notwithstanding the possibility, threat or occurrence of such an event.

B. The Board believes that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to provide Executive with an incentive to continue Executive's employment and to motivate Executive to maximize the value of the Company upon a Change in Control (as defined below) for the benefit of its stockholders.

C. The Board believes that it is imperative to provide Executive with severance benefits upon certain terminations of Executive's service to the Company that enhance Executive's financial security and provide incentive and encouragement to Executive to remain with the Company notwithstanding the possibility of such an event.

D. Certain capitalized terms used in this Agreement are defined in Section 7 below.

The parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Term of Agreement. This Agreement shall become effective as of the Effective Date and terminate upon the date that all obligations of the parties hereto with respect to this Agreement have been satisfied.

2. At-Will Employment. The Company and Executive acknowledge that Executive's employment is and shall continue to be "at-will," as defined under applicable law. If Executive's employment terminates for any reason, Executive shall not be entitled to any payments, benefits, damages, awards or compensation other than as provided by this Agreement.

3. Covered Termination Other Than During a Change in Control Period. If Executive experiences a Covered Termination other than during a Change in Control Period, and if Executive

delivers to the Company a general release of all claims against the Company and its affiliates in a form acceptable to the Company (a "Release of Claims") that becomes effective and irrevocable within sixty (60) days, or such shorter period of time specified by the Company, following such Covered Termination, then in addition to any accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement payable in accordance with applicable law, the Company shall provide Executive with the following:

(a) Severance. Executive shall be entitled to receive an amount equal to six (6) months of Executive's Base Salary payable in substantially equal installments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll policies, less applicable withholdings, with such installments to commence as soon as administratively practicable following the date the Release of Claims is not subject to revocation and, in any event, within sixty (60) days following the date of the Covered Termination.

(b) Continued Healthcare. If Executive elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the provisions of the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended ("COBRA"), the Company shall directly pay, or reimburse Executive for, the premium for Executive and Executive's covered dependents through the earlier of (i) the six (6) month anniversary of the date of Executive's termination of employment and (ii) the date Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 3(c), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

4. Covered Termination During a Change in Control Period. If Executive experiences a Covered Termination during a Change in Control Period, and if Executive delivers to the Company a Release of Claims that becomes effective and irrevocable within sixty (60) days, or such shorter period of time specified by the Company, following such Covered Termination, then in addition to any accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement payable in accordance with applicable law, the Company shall provide Executive with the following:

(a) Severance. Executive shall be entitled to receive an amount equal to 0.75 multiplied by the sum of: (i) Executive's Base Salary and (ii) Executive's target annual bonus for the fiscal year of Executive's termination, in each case, at the rate in effect immediately prior to Executive's termination of employment payable in a cash lump sum, less applicable withholdings, as soon as administratively practicable following the date the Release of Claims is not subject to revocation and, in any event, within sixty (60) days following the date of the Covered Termination.

(b) Equity Awards. Each outstanding equity award, including, without limitation, each stock option and restricted stock award, held by Executive shall automatically become vested and, if applicable, exercisable and any forfeiture restrictions or rights of repurchase thereon shall immediately lapse, in each case, with respect to one hundred percent (100%) of the shares subject thereto. To the extent vested after giving effect to the acceleration provided in the preceding sentence, each stock option held by Executive shall remain exercisable until the earlier of the original expiration date for such stock option or the first anniversary of Executive's Covered Termination.

(c) Continued Healthcare. If Executive elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the provisions of COBRA, the Company shall directly pay, or reimburse Executive for, the premium for Executive and Executive's covered dependents through the earlier of (i) the nine (9) month anniversary of the date of Executive's termination of employment and (ii) the date Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 4(c), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

5. Other Terminations. If Executive's service with the Company is terminated by the Company or by Executive for any or no reason other than as a Covered Termination, then Executive shall not be entitled to any benefits hereunder other than accrued but unpaid salary, bonus, vacation and expense reimbursement in accordance with applicable law and to elect any continued healthcare coverage as may be required under COBRA or similar state law.

6. Limitation on Payments. Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, if any payment or distribution Executive would receive pursuant to this Agreement or otherwise ("Payment") would (a) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and (b) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall either be (i) delivered in full, or (ii) delivered as to such lesser extent which would result in no portion of such Payment being subject to

the Excise Tax, whichever of the foregoing amounts, taking into account the applicable federal, state and local income taxes and the Excise Tax, results in the receipt by Executive on an after-tax basis, of the largest payment, notwithstanding that all or some portion the Payment may be taxable under Section 4999 of the Code. The accounting firm engaged by the Company for general audit purposes as of the day prior to the effective date of the Change in Control shall perform the foregoing calculations. The Company shall bear all expenses with respect to the determinations by such accounting firm required to be made hereunder. The accounting firm shall provide its calculations to the Company and Executive within fifteen (15) calendar days after the date on which Executive's right to a Payment is triggered (if requested at that time by the Company or Executive) or such other time as requested by the Company or Executive. Any good faith determinations of the accounting firm made hereunder shall be final, binding and conclusive upon the Company and Executive. Any reduction in payments and/or benefits pursuant to this Section 6 will occur in the following order: (1) reduction of cash payments; (2) cancellation of accelerated vesting of equity awards other than stock options; (3) cancellation of accelerated vesting of stock options; and (4) reduction of other benefits payable to Executive.

7. Definition of Terms. The following terms referred to in this Agreement shall have the following meanings:

(a) Base Salary. "Base Salary" means Executive's annual base salary in effect immediately prior to Executive's termination (disregarding any reduction in base salary that would give rise to Executive's right to a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason).

(b) Cause. "Cause" means (i) Executive's theft, dishonesty or falsification of any employment or Company records that is non-trivial in nature; (ii) Executive's malicious or reckless disclosure of the Company's confidential or proprietary information or any material breach by Executive of his or her obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement (as defined below); (iii) the conviction of the Executive of a felony (excluding motor vehicle violations) or the commission of gross negligence or willful misconduct, where a majority of the non-employee members of the Board reasonably determines that such act or misconduct has (A) seriously undermined the ability of the Board or management of the Company to entrust Executive with important matters or otherwise work effectively with Executive, (B) substantially contributed to the Company's loss of significant revenues or business opportunities, or (C) significantly and detrimentally affected the business or reputation of the Company or any of its subsidiaries; and/or (iv) the willful failure or refusal by Executive to follow the reasonable and lawful directives of the Board or Executive's direct supervisor, provided such willful failure or refusal continues after Executive's receipt of reasonable notice in writing of such failure or refusal and a reasonable opportunity of not less than 30 days to correct the problem. For the purpose of this Agreement, no act, or failure to act, shall be considered "willful" unless undertaken by Executive with an absence of good faith that this act, or failure to act, was in the best interests of the Company.

(c) Change in Control. "Change in Control" shall have the meaning set forth in the Company's 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan, as it may be amended from time to time, provided that such event must also constitute a "change in control event" as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5).

(d) Change in Control Period. “Change in Control Period” means the period of time beginning three (3) months prior to and ending twelve (12) months following a Change in Control.

(e) Covered Termination. “Covered Termination” means (a) an Involuntary Termination Without Cause or (b) a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason, provided that such termination or resignation constitutes a Separation from Service.

(f) Good Reason Condition. “Good Reason Condition” means that any of the following are undertaken without Executive’s express written consent: (i) a material diminution in Executive’s authority, duties, or responsibilities which substantially reduces the nature or character of Executive’s position with the Company; (ii) a material reduction by the Company of Executive’s base salary as in effect immediately prior to such reduction; (iii) a relocation of Executive’s principal office to a location more than fifty (50) miles from the location of Executive’s principal office as of immediately prior to such relocation, except for required travel by Executive on the Company’s business; or (iv) any material breach by the Company of any provision of Executive’s employment agreement or offer letter agreement which the Company does not cure within 30 days following written notice thereof from Executive.

(g) Involuntary Termination Without Cause. “Involuntary Termination Without Cause” means Executive’s dismissal or discharge by the Company other than for Cause. The termination of Executive’s employment as a result of Executive’s death or inability to perform the essential functions of his job due to disability will not be deemed to be an Involuntary Termination Without Cause.

(h) Separation from Service. “Separation from Service” means Executive’s termination of employment or service constitutes a “separation from service” within the meaning of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(h).

(i) Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason. “Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason” means Executive’s resignation as a result of a Good Reason Condition in accordance with this subsection (i). In order for a resignation to constitute a Voluntary Resignation for Good Reason, Executive must provide written notice to the Company of the existence of the Good Reason Condition within thirty (30) days of the initial existence of such Good Reason Condition. Upon receipt of such notice of the Good Reason Condition, the Company will be provided with a period of thirty (30) days during which it may remedy the Good Reason Condition and not be required to provide for the payments and benefits described in Sections 3 or 4 as a result of such proposed resignation due to the Good Reason Condition specified in the notice. If the Good Reason Condition is not remedied within the period specified in the preceding sentence, Executive may resign for Good Reason based on the Good Reason Condition specified in the notice, provided that such resignation must occur within sixty (60) days after the initial existence of such Good Reason Condition.

8. Successors.

(a) Company's Successors. Any successor to the Company (whether direct or indirect and whether by purchase, merger, consolidation, liquidation or otherwise) to all or substantially all of the Company's business and/or assets shall assume the obligations under this Agreement and agree expressly to perform the obligations under this Agreement in the same manner and to the same extent as the Company would be required to perform such obligations in the absence of a succession. For all purposes under this Agreement, the term "Company" shall include any successor to the Company's business and/or assets which executes and delivers the assumption agreement described in this Section 8(a) or which becomes bound by the terms of this Agreement by operation of law.

(b) Executive's Successors. The terms of this Agreement and all rights of Executive hereunder shall inure to the benefit of, and be enforceable by, Executive's personal or legal representatives, executors, administrators, successors, heirs, distributees, devisees and legatees.

9. Notices. Notices and all other communications contemplated by this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given when personally delivered or one day following mailing via Federal Express or similar overnight courier service. In the case of Executive, mailed notices shall be addressed to Executive at Executive's home address that the Company has on file for Executive. In the case of the Company, mailed notices shall be addressed to its primary office location, and all notices shall be directed to the attention of its Vice President of Finance and Operations.

10. Confidentiality: Non-Solicitation.

(a) Confidentiality. While Executive is employed by the Company, and thereafter, Executive shall not directly or indirectly disclose or make available to any person, firm, corporation, association or other entity for any reason or purpose whatsoever, any Confidential Information (as defined below). Upon termination of Executive's employment with the Company, all Confidential Information in Executive's possession that is in written or other tangible form (together with all copies or duplicates thereof, including computer files) shall be returned to the Company and shall not be retained by Executive or furnished to any third party, in any form except as provided herein; *provided, however*, that Executive shall not be obligated to treat as confidential, or return to the Company copies of any Confidential Information that (i) was publicly known at the time of disclosure to Executive, (ii) becomes publicly known or available thereafter other than by any means in violation of this Agreement or any other duty owed to the Company by any person or entity, or (iii) is lawfully disclosed to Executive by a third party. For purposes of this Agreement, the term "Confidential Information" shall mean information disclosed to Executive or known by Executive as a consequence of or through his or her relationship with the Company, about the customers, employees, business methods, public relations methods, organization, procedures or finances, including, without limitation, information of or relating to customer lists, of the Company and its affiliates. In addition, Executive shall continue to be subject to the Proprietary Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement entered into between Executive and the Company (the "Confidential Information Agreement").

(b) Non-Solicitation. In addition to each Executive's obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement, Executive shall not for a period of two (2) years following Executive's termination of employment for any reason, either on Executive's own account or jointly with or as a manager, agent, officer, employee, consultant, partner, joint venturer, owner or stockholder or otherwise on behalf of any other person, firm or corporation, directly or indirectly solicit or attempt to solicit away from the Company any of its officers or employees or offer employment to any person who is an officer or employee of the Company; *provided, however*, that a general advertisement to which an employee of the Company responds shall in no event be deemed to result in a breach of this Section 10(b). Executive also agrees not to harass or disparage the Company or its employees, clients, directors or agents or divert or attempt to divert any actual or potential business of the Company.

(c) Survival of Provisions. The provisions of this Section 10 shall survive the termination or expiration of the applicable Executive's employment with the Company and shall be fully enforceable thereafter. If it is determined by a court of competent jurisdiction in any state that any restriction in this Section 10 is excessive in duration or scope or is unreasonable or unenforceable under the laws of that state, it is the intention of the parties that such restriction may be modified or amended by the court to render it enforceable to the maximum extent permitted by the law of that state.

11. Dispute Resolution. To ensure the timely and economical resolution of disputes that arise in connection with this Agreement, Executive and the Company agree that any and all disputes, claims, or causes of action arising from or relating to the enforcement, breach, performance or interpretation of this Agreement, Executive's employment, or the termination of Executive's employment, shall be resolved to the fullest extent permitted by law by final, binding and confidential arbitration, by a single arbitrator, in Alameda County, California, conducted by Judicial Arbitration and Mediation Services, Inc. ("JAMS") under the applicable JAMS employment rules. **By agreeing to this arbitration procedure, both Executive and the Company waive the right to resolve any such dispute through a trial by jury or judge or administrative proceeding.** The arbitrator shall: (i) have the authority to compel adequate discovery for the resolution of the dispute and to award such relief as would otherwise be permitted by law; and (ii) issue a written arbitration decision, to include the arbitrator's essential findings and conclusions and a statement of the award. The arbitrator shall be authorized to award any or all remedies that Executive or the Company would be entitled to seek in a court of law. The Company shall pay all JAMS' arbitration fees in excess of the amount of court fees that would be required if the dispute were decided in a court of law. Nothing in this Agreement is intended to prevent either Executive or the Company from obtaining injunctive relief in court to prevent irreparable harm pending the conclusion of any such arbitration. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive and the Company each have the right to resolve any issue or dispute over intellectual property rights by Court action instead of arbitration.

12. Miscellaneous Provisions.

(a) Section 409A.

(i) Separation from Service. Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, no amount deemed deferred compensation subject to Section 409A of the Code shall be payable pursuant to Section 3 unless Executive's termination of employment constitutes a Separation from Service and, except as provided under Section 12(a)(ii) of this Agreement, any such amount shall not be paid, or in the case of installments, commence payment, until the sixtieth (60th) day following Executive's Separation from Service. Any installment payments that would have been made to Executive during the sixty (60) day period immediately following Executive's Separation from Service but for the preceding sentence shall be paid to Executive on the sixtieth (60th) day following Executive's Separation from Service and the remaining payments shall be made as provided in this Agreement.

(ii) Specified Employee. Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary in this Agreement, if Executive is deemed at the time of his separation from service to be a "specified employee" for purposes of Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, to the extent delayed commencement of any portion of the benefits to which Executive is entitled under this Agreement is required in order to avoid a prohibited distribution under Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, such portion of Executive's benefits shall not be provided to Executive prior to the earlier of (a) the expiration of the six (6)-month period measured from the date of the Executive's Separation from Service or (b) the date of Executive's death. Upon the first business day following the expiration of the applicable Code Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) period, all payments deferred pursuant to this Section 12(a)(ii) shall be paid in a lump sum to Executive, and any remaining payments due under this Agreement shall be paid as otherwise provided herein.

(iii) Expense Reimbursements. To the extent that any reimbursements payable pursuant to this Agreement are subject to the provisions of Section 409A of the Code, any such reimbursements payable to Executive pursuant to this Agreement shall be paid to Executive no later than December 31 of the year following the year in which the expense was incurred, the amount of expenses reimbursed in one year shall not affect the amount eligible for reimbursement in any subsequent year, and Executive's right to reimbursement under this Agreement will not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit.

(iv) Installments. For purposes of Section 409A of the Code (including, without limitation, for purposes of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-2(b)(2)(iii)), Executive's right to receive any installment payments under this Agreement shall be treated as a right to receive a series of separate payments and, accordingly, each such installment payment shall at all times be considered a separate and distinct payment.

(b) Waiver. No provision of this Agreement shall be modified, waived or discharged unless the modification, waiver or discharge is agreed to in writing and signed by Executive and by an authorized officer of the Company (other than Executive). No waiver by either party of any breach of, or of compliance with, any condition or provision of this Agreement by the other party shall be considered a waiver of any other condition or provision or of the same condition or provision at another time.

(c) Whole Agreement. This Agreement and the Confidential Information Agreement represent the entire understanding of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof.

(d) Choice of Law. The validity, interpretation, construction and performance of this Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California.

(e) Severability. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision or provisions of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision hereof, which shall remain in full force and effect.

(f) Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together will constitute one and the same instrument.

(Signature page follows)

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, each of the parties has executed this Agreement, in the case of the Company by its duly authorized officer, as of the day and year set forth below.

ARDELYX, INC.

By: /s/ Mike Raab
Mike Raab

Date: December 6, 2016

EXECUTIVE

By: /s/ Bryan Shaw
Bryan Shaw

STATEMENT REGARDING THE COMPUTATION OF RATIOS

The following table sets forth our ratio of earnings to fixed charges for each of the periods indicated (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
EARNINGS:					
Loss before income taxes	\$(112,387)	\$(29,650)	\$(3,147)	\$(6,423)	\$(9,785)
Add back: Fixed Charges	367	300	187	259	309
Total earnings	\$(112,020)	\$(29,350)	\$(2,960)	\$(6,164)	\$(9,476)
COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERENCE DIVIDENDS:					
Interest expense	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Estimated interest component of rent	367	300	187	259	309
Total combined fixed charges and preference dividends	\$ 367	\$ 300	\$ 187	\$ 259	\$ 309
RATIO OF EARNINGS TO COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERENCE DIVIDENDS	<u>N/A</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>N/A</u>

For purposes of computing the ratio of earnings to fixed charges, earnings consist of loss before income taxes plus fixed charges. Fixed charges consist of interest expense and that portion of rental expense deemed representative of interest. Earnings were insufficient to cover combined fixed charges and preference dividends by \$112,387, \$29,650, \$3,147, \$6,423 and \$9,785 for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015, 2014, 2013 and 2012 respectively.

For the periods indicated above, we had no outstanding shares of preferred stock with required dividend payments.

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the following Registration Statements:

- (1) Registration Statement on Form S-8 (No. 333-197408) pertaining to the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended, the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan and the 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.
- (2) Registration Statement on Form S-8 (No. 333-202663) pertaining to the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan and the 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.
- (3) Registration Statements on Form S-3 (Nos. 333-205630, 333-205631 and 333-213085) of Ardelyx, Inc.
- (4) Registration Statement on Form S-8 (No. 333-210079) pertaining to the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.
- (5) Registration Statement on Form S-8 (No. 333-214538) pertaining to the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.

of our report dated February 17, 2017, with respect to the consolidated financial statements of Ardelyx, Inc. included in this Annual Report (Form 10-K) of Ardelyx Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2016.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Redwood City, California
February 17, 2017

CERTIFICATION

I, Michael Raab, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Ardelyx, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: February 17, 2017

By: _____ /s/ Michael Raab
Name
Michael Raab
President Chief Executive Officer and Director
(Principal Executive Officer)

CERTIFICATION

I, Mark Kaufmann, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Ardelyx, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: February 17, 2017

By:

/s/ Mark Kaufmann

Name

Mark Kaufmann

Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906
OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the period ending December 31, 2016, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), Michael Raab, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and Mark Kaufmann, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, respectively, do each hereby certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result of operations of the Company.

Date: February 17, 2017

By: _____ /s/ Michael Raab
Name
Michael Raab
President Chief Executive Officer and Director
(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: February 17, 2017

By: _____ /s/ Mark Kaufmann
Name
Mark Kaufmann
Chief Financial Officer
(Principal Financial Officer)

